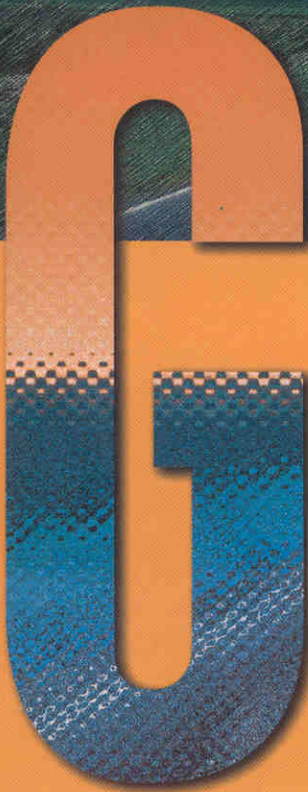


2

ENGLISH GRAMMAR BOOK



Grammarway

Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans



Express Publishing

Grammarway 2

Jenny Dooley-Virginia Evans



Express Publishing

Published by Express Publishing

Liberty House, New Greenham Park, Newbury,

Berkshire RG19 6HW

Tel.: (0044) 1635 817 363

Fax: (0044) 1635 817 463

e-mail: inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk

INTERNET <http://www.expresspublishing.co.uk>

© Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans, 1998

Design & Illustration © Express Publishing, 1998

Colour Illustrations: Terry Wilson

First published 1998

New edition 2001

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

ISBN 1 - 903128 - 91 - 9

Contents

Introduction	5
Unit 1 Present Continuous - Present Simple (Present Simple vs Present Continuous)	6
Unit 2 Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs) - Used to	14
Unit 3 Past Continuous (Past Continuous vs Past Simple)	20
Unit 4 Present Perfect Simple (Past Simple vs Present Perfect Simple)	26
Unit 5 The Future (Future Simple - Be going to - Present Continuous)	32
Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)	38
Unit 6 Relatives (Relative Pronouns/Adverbs - Identifying/Non-Identifying Clauses)	40
Unit 7 Present Perfect Continuous (Present Perfect Continuous vs Present Perfect Simple)	46
Unit 8 Pronouns - Both/Neither - All/None - Possessives	52
Unit 9 Modal Verbs I (Must/Have to/Mustn't - Needn't - Can/Could/Be able to)	60
Unit 10 The Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"	66
Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10)	72
Unit 11 Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous	74
Unit 12 Modal Verbs II (May/Might/Could - Should/Ought to - Shall/Will)	80
Unit 13 The Passive	86
Unit 14 Reported Speech	92
Unit 15 Conditionals - Wishes	100
Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)	108
Unit 16 Adjectives - Adverbs - Comparisons	110
Unit 17 Nouns - Articles (The Plural - Countable Nouns/Uncountable Nouns - Indefinite/Definite Article) ..	118
Unit 18 Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few	126
Unit 19 Questions - Question Tags	132
Unit 20 Prepositions (Time - Place - Movement) - Linking Words	140
Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)	148
Irregular Verbs	152

Introduction

Grammarway 2 is the second book in a four-level grammar series presented in full colour. The book is designed for learners of the English language at post-elementary level, and can be used for self-study or in the classroom as a supplement to any course at this level.

The aim of the book is to help learners understand English grammar structures through comprehensive theory tables and functional examples, accompanied by a wealth of attractive photographs and illustrations.

The book consists of **20 units**, each focusing on a particular grammar topic.

A typical unit contains:

- presentation of the grammar structure by means of visual prompts
- simple, concise explanation of the grammar structure
- examples in everyday conversational English, together with a few expressions showing slightly more formal use
- exercises practising the new structures, to help learners use appropriate patterns in everyday situations
- speaking and writing activities to practise the new structures in oral and written form
- a revision box in each unit

A **revision unit** follows every five units to consolidate material presented in previous units.

The **Picture Flashcards** which accompany the book can be used for lively, motivating presentation of the target grammar structures.

The book adheres to the principle that every structure should first be heard, then practised in oral, and finally, in written form. Based on the use of full-colour visual stimuli, the book encourages learners to speak before writing, and allows them to practise English structures through a variety of enjoyable and useful activities.

The Student's Book is accompanied by a **Teacher's Book** containing:

- guidance on presenting the theory of each unit, with or without Picture Flashcards
- a full key to the exercises in the Student's Book
- four tests with two different versions of each test

Thanks

The authors would like to thank Rania Dunn, Anna Miller, Laura Houston, Jonathan Harrison and Steven Davies for their help in producing this book. Many thanks to E. Mavragani (art director) and V. Sipsi (assistant director). We would also like to thank those institutions and teachers who piloted the manuscript, and whose comments and feedback were invaluable in the production of the book.

UNIT 1

Present Continuous - Present Simple

Present Continuous



Bob and Claire **aren't working** today. They're on holiday. They're **having** a nice time. What **is Bob doing** now? He **is taking** a picture of Claire.

We form the present continuous with the auxiliary verb **to be** and the main verb with the **-ing** suffix. The main verb with the **-ing** suffix is the same in all persons.

Affirmative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	am	'm	} reading.
He/She/It	is	's	
You/We/They	are	're	
Interrogative			
Am	I	} reading?	
Is	he/she/it		
Are	you/we/they		
Negative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	am not	'm not	} reading.
He/She/It	is not	isn't	
You/We/They	are not	aren't	

Spelling Rules

- ◆ Verbs ending in **-e**, drop the **-e** and take the **-ing** suffix.
dance - dancing but see - seeing
- ◆ Verbs ending in **one stressed vowel** between **two consonants**, double the last consonant and take the **-ing** suffix.
run - running get - getting
but open - opening
- ◆ Verbs ending in **-l**, double the **-l** and take the **-ing** suffix.
travel - travelling
- ◆ Verbs ending in **-ie**, drop the **-ie** and take **-y + -ing**.
lie - lying die - dying

1 Add **-ing** to the verbs and put them in the correct boxes.

talk, dive, swim, shop, lie, study, mend, write, try, take, cook, stop, sleep, die, sit

+ ing	-ie = y + ing
<i>talking</i>	
-e = ing	double consonant + ing

2 Fill in the gaps with the **present continuous**.

- 1 We*are're tidying*..... (tidy) the garden.
- 2 I (not/do) my homework.
- 3 (Dad/paint) the living-room?
- 4 He (run).
- 5 The girls (play) with their dolls.
- 6 John (study) at university.
- 7 Helen and I (make) dinner.
- 8 (you/listen) to the radio?

Present Continuous - Present Simple

Use

We use the present continuous:

- ◆ for actions happening now, at the moment of speaking.

He **is reading** a book right now.



- ◆ for temporary actions happening around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking.

She **is practising** for a concert these days. (She's not practising right now; she's resting.)



- ◆ with 'always' for actions happening too often and about which we wish to express our annoyance or criticism.

'You're **always interrupting** me!' (annoyance)



- ◆ for fixed arrangements in the near future.

He **is flying** to Milan in an hour. (It's been arranged.)



Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the present continuous include: **now, at the moment, these days, at present, always, tonight, still, etc.**

3

Look at the picture and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.



Four people 1) **...are sitting...** (sit) at a table. They are in a restaurant. They 2) (have) dinner. They 3) (wear) smart clothes. The man 4) (wear) a suit. The parents 5) (smile) at each other and they 6) (talk). The children 7) (listen). The girl 8) (drink) some wine. The boy 9) (eat) some bread. They 10) (enjoy) their meal.

Short Answers

In short answers we use only **Yes** or **No**, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb **is/isn't** or **are/aren't**. We do not repeat the whole question.

Are you leaving?	Yes, I am/we are.	No, I'm not/we aren't.
Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it is.	No, he/she/it isn't.
Are they ...?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

4

Look at the picture in ex. 3 again. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- the parents / wear / sports clothes?
SA: *Are the parents wearing sports clothes?*
SB: *No, they aren't. They're wearing smart clothes.*
- the four people / have / dinner?
- the children / talk?
- the girl / drink / some juice?
- the boy / eat / some ice-cream?

Present Simple



Richard Taylor and Sarah Perkins **work** in the same office.

What time **do they start** work?

Sarah **arrives** at work at 9 o'clock but Richard **doesn't get** to the office until 10 o'clock.

We form the present simple with the **subject** (i.e. the subject pronoun or noun) and the **main verb**. We usually add an **-s** to the **third person singular** in the affirmative. In the interrogative and negative forms, we use the auxiliary verb **do/don't** with I, you, we, they and **does/doesn't** with he, she and it. We do not add an **-s** to the main verb when it appears with **does/doesn't**.

Affirmative			
I/You/We/They		read.	
He/She/It		reads.	
Interrogative			
Do I/you/we/they	}	read?	
Does he/she/it			
Negative			
	Long form	Short form	} read.
I/You/We/They	do not	don't	
He/She/It	does not	doesn't	

Spelling Rules

- ◆ Most verbs take **-s** in the third person singular.
I read - he reads
- ◆ Verbs ending in **-ss, -sh, -ch, -x** and **-o**, take **-es**.
I kiss - he kisses, I brush - he brushes, I teach - he teaches, I fix - he fixes, I go - he goes
- ◆ Verbs ending in a **consonant + y**, drop the **-y** and take **-ies**.
I try - he tries, I fly - he flies
- ◆ Verbs ending in a **vowel + y**, simply take **-s**.
I buy - he buys

5 Write the **third person singular** of the verbs in the list in the correct box.

dance, finish, study, open, mix, pray, put, miss, like, dry, do, catch, wash, say, cry, copy, watch, play, pass, begin

-s	-es	-ies
dances	finishes	studies
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

6 Fill in the gaps with the **present simple**.

- 1 A: Where *is* (be) Jack?
B: At school.
- 2 A: (you/come) here very often?
B: Yes, every evening.
- 3 A: I (play) tennis in the summer.
B: Really? So do I!
- 4 A: We (leave) the house at 6:30 every morning.
B: That's very early.
- 5 A: Sam (not/know) anything about the party.
B: I know. It's a surprise.

Present Continuous - Present Simple

Pronunciation

In the present simple the suffix of the third person singular is pronounced:

- ◆ / s / when the verb ends in a / f /, / k /, / p / or / t / sound.
laughs, drinks, sleeps, hates
- ◆ / ɪz / when the verb ends in a / s /, / ʃ /, / tʃ /, / dʒ / or / z / sound.
misses, wishes, matches, arranges, rises
- ◆ / z / when the verb ends in any other sound.
dreams, stays, begins, stands, saves

Use

The present simple is used for:

- ◆ permanent states.
- ◆ repeated actions or daily routines (often with adverbs of frequency such as: always, never, usually, etc.).



Mr Gibson **is** a businessman. He **lives** in New York. (permanent state)
He **usually starts** work at 9 am. (daily routine)
He **often stays** at the office until late in the evening. (daily routine)

- ◆ general truths or laws of nature.

The moon **moves** round the earth.



- ◆ programmes or timetables (trains, buses, etc.).

The bus **leaves** in ten minutes.



7

Write the third person singular of the verbs in the correct box, then read them aloud.

laugh, kiss, read, look, speak, kick, put, catch, drive, brush, ride, walk, open, jump, play, know, cough, see, dance, close, help, listen, watch, wash, travel, write, lose, eat, rain, change

/ s /	<i>laughs,</i>
/ ɪz /	<i>kisses,</i>
/ z /	<i>reads,</i>



Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the present simple include: *usually, always* (adverbs of frequency), etc., *every day/week/month/year, etc., on Mondays/Tuesdays, etc., in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night/the weekend, etc.*

8

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present continuous or the present simple.

- 1 A: Where's James?
B: He **is playing** (play) football in the garden right now.
- 2 A: Bill (dance) very well.
B: Yes, he's a good singer, too.
- 3 A: Lucy is very busy.
B: Yes. She (work) very hard these days.
- 4 A: What (you/do) on Saturdays?
B: I clean the house and go shopping.
- 5 A: Why (you/pack) your suitcase?
B: Because I (fly) to Paris tomorrow morning.
- 6 A: Fred (not/know) how to swim.
B: That's because he's only three.
- 7 A: Max looks very fit.
B: Yes. He (take) a lot of exercise these days.

Adverbs of Frequency

◆ We often use adverbs of frequency with the present simple. They show us how often something happens. They answer the question **How often...?**

e.g. *How often do you visit your aunt? I **always/usually/sometimes** visit her on Sundays.*

Adverbs of Frequency	
always	100%
usually	75%
often	50%
sometimes	25%
rarely/seldom	10%
never	0%

◆ Adverbs of frequency go before the main verbs (*visit, drink, etc.*), but after the verb *to be* and after auxiliary verbs such as *can, do, must, etc.*

e.g. *Peter **often** visits his grandparents at the weekend.*
*Sharon **never** drinks coffee.*
*Jim **is always** on time for work.*
*Bob **can never** wake up early in the morning.*
*Do you **often** go to the cinema at the weekend?*
*Paul **doesn't usually** eat out on Sundays.*

◆ The adverbs **rarely, seldom** and **never** have a negative meaning and they are never used with the word **not**.

e.g. *He **rarely** goes to the cinema.*
*I **never** take sugar in my coffee.*

9 Rewrite the sentences putting the adverb in brackets in the correct place.

- You must brush your teeth twice a day. (always)
*You must **always** brush your teeth twice a day.*
- Is he on time for work? (always)

- Karen has cereal for breakfast. (sometimes)

- Paul doesn't listen to music in the evening. (usually)

- The children help with the housework. (rarely)

- Must you play your music so loud? (always)

- Sheila can park her car properly. (never)

10 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.

Charlie Foster **1)** ...*works*... (work) at a bakery. He **2)** (always/get up) very early because he **3)** (start) work at four o'clock every morning. Charlie **4)** (not/be) at work this morning. At the moment he **5)** (pack) a suitcase because he **6)** (go) on holiday today. Charlie **7)** (sing) to himself. He's very happy. Right now he **8)** (look for) his aeroplane tickets. Where are they? He can't find them. There they are; under his bed! Charlie **9)** (call) a taxi now. His plane **10)** (leave) in an hour. Where **11)** (Charlie/go)? To Hawaii!

Short Answers

Do you get up early?	Yes, I/we do.	No, I/we don't.
Does he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it does.	No, he/she/it doesn't.
Do they ...?	Yes, they do.	No, they don't.

Note: In short answers, adverbs of frequency always go before the auxiliary verb.

e.g. *Do you watch horror films on TV?*
*Yes, I **often** do. / No, I **never** do.*

11 Look at the text in ex. 10 again, then, in pairs, ask and answer questions about Charlie Foster, as in the examples.

- Charlie / work / at a bank?
 SA: *Does Charlie work at a bank?*
 SB: *No, he doesn't. He works at a bakery.*
- Charlie / pack / a suitcase / at the moment?
 SA: *Is Charlie packing a suitcase at the moment?*
 SB: *Yes, he is.*
- Charlie / start work / at 4 o'clock every morning?
- Charlie / go on holiday / next week?
- Charlie / sing to himself?
- Charlie / look for his tickets / right now?
- the plane / leave / in an hour?
- Charlie / go / Tahiti?

Present Simple versus Present Continuous

Present Simple

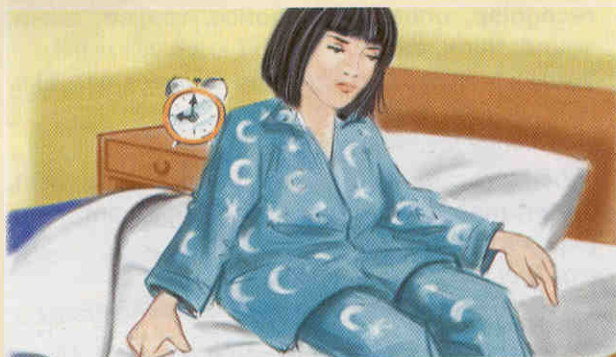
- The present simple is used for permanent states, for repeated actions and daily routines.



Claire Bryan **works** as a secretary. She **starts** work at eight o'clock every day. She **types** Mr Moore's letters.

Present Continuous

- The present continuous is used for temporary actions happening at or around the moment of speaking.



It's nine o'clock. Claire is still at home because she is ill. She **is wearing** her pyjamas and she **is sitting** on her bed. She **isn't working** today.

12 Look at the pictures and write sentences, as in the examples.



1 taxi driver / drive a taxi / wash the taxi
What does the taxi driver do?
 He drives a taxi.
Is he driving a taxi now?
 No, he isn't. He's washing the taxi.

2 nurse / look after patients / read a book

3 maid / clean the house / talk on the phone

4 vet / treat animals / listen to music

5 mechanic / repair cars / eat a sandwich

6 waiter / serve customers / read a newspaper

Non-Continuous Verbs

Some verbs do not have continuous tenses. These include:

- ◆ **Verbs of the senses:** see, hear, feel, taste, smell.
e.g. *This cake **tastes** delicious.*
(NOT: ~~*This cake is tasting delicious.*~~)
- ◆ **Verbs of perception:** know, remember, forget, recognise, understand, notice, realise, seem, sound, think, etc. e.g. *I **don't know** his name.*
- ◆ **Verbs which express likes and dislikes:** love, like, hate, dislike, enjoy, etc.
e.g. *Shirley **loves** jazz music.*
- ◆ **Other verbs:** include, matter, need, belong, cost, prefer, mean, own, appear, believe, want, have (=possess), etc.
e.g. *That jacket **costs** a lot of money.*
(NOT: ~~*That jacket is costing a lot of money.*~~)

13

Read the following dialogue between a hotel owner and the receptionist. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.



- A: Good morning, Catherine. A special guest 1) *...is coming...* (come) to our hotel today.
 B: Really! 2) (I/know) who it is?
 A: I 3) (think) you do. He 4) (star) in the TV series, 'Rooftop', at the moment.
 B: It 5) (be) Paul Roberts, isn't it? When 6) (he/come)? I can't wait to meet him in person!
 A: At 3 o'clock this afternoon. But there are a few things you 7) (need) to know. First of all, he 8) (love) flowers. He also 9) (enjoy) having his breakfast in the dining-room, not in his room.
 B: Why 10) (he/stay) at our hotel?
 A: Because he 11) (want) some peace and quiet and he 12) (not/like) to be disturbed by reporters.
 B: I see. Well, let's hope that everything will be okay while he 13) (stay) here.

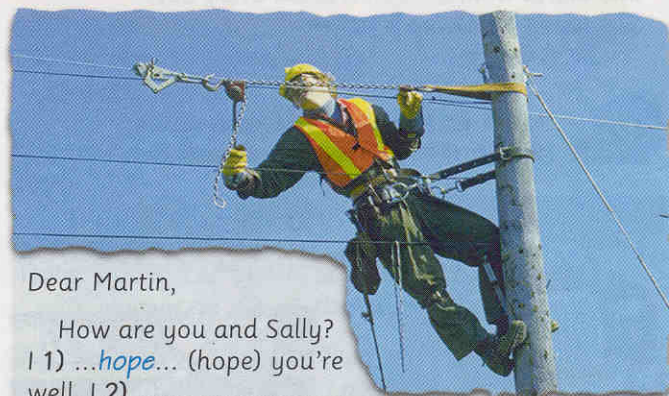
14

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.

- 1 Jason *...is not coming...* (not/come) with us this evening.
- 2 What (this sign/mean)?
- 3 We (usually/meet) at the sports centre every Wednesday afternoon.
- 4 Greg (train) for the next Olympic Games.
- 5 Michael Burns is very rich. He (own) a department store.
- 6 John and Mary (play) chess at the moment.
- 7 Peter (not/usually/have) bacon and eggs for breakfast.
- 8 My father (buy) a newspaper every day.
- 9 Mr and Mrs Dean (not/go) to Mexico tomorrow.
- 10 '..... (Pierre/speak) English?'
'No, but he (speak) French.'

15

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.



Dear Martin,

How are you and Sally?
 I 1) *...hope...* (hope) you're well. I 2) (write) to give you some good news. I have got a summer job for the holidays! I 3) (repair) telephone lines for a telephone company.
 I 4) (usually/ride) my bicycle to work because it's only a ten minute ride from home. We 5) (start) work at 8:30. We 6) (finish) at 4:30 on Mondays to Thursdays, but at 2:30 on Fridays, so I 7) (have) long weekends.
 I 8) (work) very hard at the moment. To tell you the truth, I 9) (be) a bit nervous because my boss 10) (leave) for Scotland on business next week, so I'll be on my own. Lizzie says I 11) (worry) about it too much. She's probably right!

Please write with your news. Say hello to Sally for me.

Best wishes,
Richard

Present Continuous - Present Simple

16 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Steve goes fishing tomorrow.
- 2 Rebecca wash her hair every day.
- 3 I am visiting my grandparents every week.
- 4 Tim doesn't wants to do his homework.
- 5 He sits on the floor at the moment.
- 6 Do you watch TV in the evenings always?
- 7 Sarah is drinking coffee every morning.
- 8 They don't go usually on holiday in May.
- 9 Does she work late? No, she does never.
- 10 Peter looks for a new house at the moment.

17 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the present simple or present continuous.

cost, leave, be, snow, like



ORAL Activity

Look at picture A and say what the Hendersons usually do on Saturday morning, as in the example. Then, look at picture B and say what they are doing this Saturday morning.



e.g. Mr Henderson usually reads his newspaper.



e.g. Mr Henderson is taking pictures.

WRITING Activity

Look at the Oral Activity and write about what the Hendersons usually do on Saturday mornings and what they are doing this Saturday morning. Start like this:

On Saturday mornings Mr Henderson usually reads his newspaper. Mrs Henderson

This Saturday morning the Hendersons are in the countryside. Mr Henderson is taking pictures. Mrs Henderson

UNIT 2

Past Simple - Used to

Past Simple (Regular Verbs)



Last summer, Julie and Brian **visited** Australia. They **stayed** at a lovely hotel in Sydney. They **visited** the Sydney Opera House and they **walked** across the Sydney Harbour Bridge. **Did** they **enjoy** themselves? Yes, they **did**.

We form the past simple of **regular verbs** by adding **-ed** to the main verb.

e.g. She **watched** TV last night.

We form questions and negations with the auxiliary verb **did/did not (didn't)**, the subject and the main verb without -ed.

e.g. **Did** she **watch** TV last night?

She **did not/didn't watch** TV last night.

Affirmative

I
He/She/It
You/We/They } finished.

Interrogative

Did
I
he/she/it
you/we/they } finish?

Negative

Long form Short form

I
He/She/It
You/We/They } did not didn't } finish.

Spelling Rules

- ◆ Verbs ending in **-e** take only **-d**. *dance - danced*
- ◆ Verbs ending in a **consonant + y**, drop the **y** and take **-ied**. *try - tried*
- ◆ Verbs ending in a **vowel + y**, take **-ed**.
play - played, stay - stayed
- ◆ Verbs ending in one **stressed vowel** between two consonants, double the last consonant and take **-ed**.
plan - planned but open - opened
- ◆ Verbs ending in **-l**, double the **l** and take **-ed**.
travel - travelled, quarrel - quarrelled

1

Write the past simple of the verbs in the list in the correct box.

laugh, study, travel, pray, stop, close, cry, rob, call, love, tidy, dance, miss, drop, phone, enjoy, try, live, refer, look, carry

+ ed

laughed

+ d

~~-y~~ → ied

double consonant
+ ed

2

Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.

- 1 Olivia's room is clean now. (clean it/an hour ago)
She cleaned it an hour ago.
- 2 Helen isn't watching TV. (turn it off/half an hour ago)
- 3 Steve doesn't go to the gym any more. (stop/six months ago)
- 4 Mary is eating the cake. (bake it/half an hour ago)
- 5 Kim is having a party today. (arrange it/two weeks ago)
- 6 Rob doesn't live here any more. (move/three days ago)
- 7 Peter's house is tidy. (tidy it/two hours ago)

Pronunciation

The suffix **-ed** is pronounced:

- ◆ / **ɪd** / when the verb ends in a / t / or / d / sound.
posted, succeeded
- ◆ / **t** / when the verb ends in a / k /, / s /, / tʃ /, / ʃ /, / f / or / p / sound.
cooked, kissed, touched, wished, laughed, stepped
- ◆ / **d** / when the verb ends in any other sound.
arrived, prepared, showed, robbed

3 Write the past simple of the verbs in the correct box, then read them aloud.

want, open, wash, work, arrest, help, carry, visit, cook, clean, need, finish, load, live, watch, accept, laugh, stay, pass, type, persuade, arrange, rub

/ ɪd /	wanted
/ t /	
/ d /	

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple.

- 1 A: Sorry Mum, but I ...*dropped*... (drop) the glass on the floor.
B: Never mind. Just be careful next time.
- 2 A: (you/watch) the horror film last night?
B: Yes, but I (not/enjoy) it.
- 3 A: (your neighbours/move) house yesterday?
B: Yes, we (help) them move their boxes.
- 4 A: A train (crash) last night.
B: I know. Luckily, all the passengers (survive).
- 5 A: Susan (not/play) tennis yesterday.
B: I know. She's playing today instead.
- 6 A: (you/see) Kate yesterday?
B: Yes. We (have) lunch together.

Past Simple (Irregular Verbs)



Julie and Brian **went** swimming every day. They **saw** some kangaroos, but they **didn't see** any crocodiles. They **had** a lot of fun.

Irregular verbs do not form the past simple by adding **-ed**.

e.g. leave-left, cut-cut, swim-swam

(See list of irregular verbs on page 152.)

They form questions and negations with **did/did not (didn't)** and the root form (infinitive) of the verb.

e.g. They **left** - **Did** they **leave**? - They **didn't leave**.

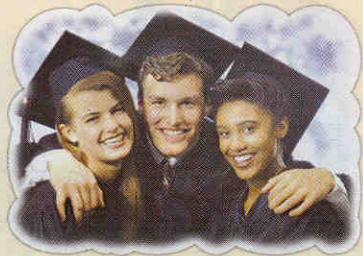
Affirmative		
I He/She/It You/We/They	}	left.
Interrogative		
Did	}	leave?
Negative		
	Long form	Short form
I He/She/It You/We/They	did not	didn't
	}	leave.

Use

We use the past simple:

- ◆ for actions which happened at a definite or stated time in the past; that is, we know **when** they happened.

They **graduated** four years ago. (When did they graduate? Four years ago. We know the time.)



- ◆ for actions which happened repeatedly in the past but don't happen any more. In this case we can use adverbs of frequency (*always, often, usually, etc.*).

He **often played** football with his dad when he was five. (But he doesn't play football with his dad any more.)



- ◆ for actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.



They **cooked** the meal first.



Then they **ate** with their friends.

- ◆ to talk about people who are no longer alive.

Princess Diana **visited** a lot of schools.



Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the past simple include: *yesterday, last night/week/month/year/Monday, etc., two days/weeks/months/years ago, then, when, in 1992, etc.*

5

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple. What use of the past simple does each sentence show?

- 1 Mother ...*cleaned*... (clean) the windows twice last week. (*definite/stated time*)
- 2 They (not/go) on holiday to Spain last year.
- 3 Tina (not/sing) in the school concert yesterday.
- 4 Paul often (fight) with his brother when they were young.
- 5 Mother Teresa (help) the poor people of India.
- 6 Her sister (bake) this beautiful cake on Monday.
- 7 (Sam/enjoy) his trip to Wales last weekend?
- 8 John (fall) and (hurt) his knee.

6

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- A Lesley 1) ...*bought*... (buy) her house two months ago. It is a beautiful cottage in the countryside. However, when Lesley 2) (decide) to buy it, it 3) (need) a lot of work. First, she 4) (decorate) all the rooms. Then, she 5) (plant) lots of flowers in the garden. After that, she 6) (make) new curtains for all the windows. When it was ready, she 7) (move) in. That was last week. Now, Lesley is very happy.
- B Claude Monet 1) ...*was*... (be) a famous artist. He 2) (paint) lots of beautiful pictures in his lifetime. He often 3) (take) his paints and a canvas into the countryside. He 4) (love) to paint trees and rivers during the different seasons of the year. Monet 5) (create) a new kind of art called Impressionism. He 6) (die) in 1926, but many people still visit museums and galleries to look at his pictures.

Short Answers

e.g. Did you buy a gift for your mother? Yes, I did.

Did you ...?	Yes, I/we did.	No, I/we didn't.
Did he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it did.	No, he/she/it didn't.
Did they ...?	Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

Ferdinand Magellan 1) *...was...* (be) a Portuguese sailor who 2) (want) to sail around the world. Emperor Charles V of Spain 3) (give) him five ships and two hundred and sixty-five Spanish sailors. They 4) (leave) Spain on 20th September, 1519 and 5) (begin) their long and dangerous journey.

On the journey, Magellan 6) (discover) the Pacific Ocean. Unfortunately, he and many of the sailors 7) (die) in a battle on 27th April, 1521. After that, a Spanish sailor 8) (take) control of the ships and 9) (set off) to complete the voyage. Only one ship and sixteen men 10) (survive) the journey. They 11) (arrive) back in Spain on 6th September, 1522. They 12) (be) the first men to sail around the world.

8 Read the text in ex. 7 again and, in pairs, ask and answer questions as in the examples.

- Ferdinand Magellan / be / a Portuguese sailor?
SA: *Was Ferdinand Magellan a Portuguese sailor?*
SB: *Yes, he was.*
- the Emperor of Spain / give him / fifteen ships?
SA: *Did the Emperor of Spain give him fifteen ships?*
SB: *No, he didn't. He gave him five ships.*
- they / leave / Spain / 1619?
- the journey / be / long and dangerous?
- Magellan / discover / the Pacific Ocean?
- Magellan / die / with soldiers / in battle?
- a Spanish sailor / complete / voyage?
- the remaining ship / reach / Spain / 1523?

9

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple.



- A: What 1) *.....did you do.....* (you/do) last summer?
 B: I 2) (work) in a fast food restaurant.
 A: What kind of work 3) (you/do)?
 B: I 4) (take) orders from customers.
 A: 5) (you/earn) much money?
 B: Yes, but I 6) (spend) most of it.
 A: What 7) (you/spend) it on?
 B: I 8) (go) on holiday to the Greek islands.
 A: 9) (you/have) a good time?
 B: Yes, it 10) (be) wonderful!

10

You have just come back from a holiday. Your friend is asking you some questions. Look at the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions giving your own answers.

- where / go?
SA: *Where did you go?*
SB: *I went to Spain.*
- who / go with?
.....
- have / a good time?
.....
- stay / at a camp-site?
.....
- the weather / good?
.....
- what / do every day?
.....
- eat / at restaurants?
.....
- go / the beach?
.....

Used to



People **used to dress** differently in the past. Women **used to wear** long dresses. **Did they use to carry** parasols with them? Yes, they did. They **didn't use to go** out alone at night.

◆ **Used to** is used to talk about past habits or things that do not happen any more. It has the same form in all persons, singular and plural. It is followed by infinitive.

e.g. Peter **used to eat** a lot of sweets. (=Peter doesn't eat many sweets any more.)

We form questions and negations with the auxiliary verb **did/did not (didn't)**, the subject and the verb "use" without -d.

e.g. **Did Peter use to eat** many sweets?
Mary **didn't use to stay** out late.

◆ We can use the **past simple** instead of "used to" with no difference in meaning.

e.g. She **used to live** in the countryside.
= She **lived** in the countryside.

Affirmative

I
He/She/It
You/We/They } **used to** travel.

Interrogative

Did I
he/she/it
you/we/they } **use to** travel?

Negative

	Long form	Short form	
I He/She/It You/We/They	did not	didn't	} use to travel.

11

Peter Gordon won a lot of money on the lottery last year. Look at the pictures and say what Peter used to do and what he does now.

e.g. Peter **used to live** in a small house, but now he lives in a big house.

LAST YEAR	NOW
1 live/small house	live/big house
2 go to work/by bus	go to work/by car
3 eat/at home	eat out
4 watch/TV	go/the theatre
5 spend/his holidays/at a camp-site	spend/his holidays/travelling

12

Complete the sentences with the correct form of **used to** and the verb in brackets.

- I ...**didn't use to watch**... (not/watch) the news, but now I watch it every day.
- My aunt (drink) a lot of coffee, but now she prefers to drink tea.
- We (live) in a flat, but we live in a big house now.
- (you/go) to school on foot?
- We (not/like) each other, but now we're good friends.
- I (not/eat) vegetables. Now I eat them every day.
- My sister (play) the piano, but now she doesn't.
- They..... (spend) their weekends in the countryside. They don't any more.

Short Answers

e.g. Did you use to go out often? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Did you ...?	Yes, I/we did.	No, I/we didn't.
Did he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it did.	No, he/she/it didn't.
Did they ...?	Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

13 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.

SA: Did you use to play with your friends when you were five?
 SB: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 play with your friends? | 6 listen to fairy tales? |
| 2 watch many cartoons? | 7 have a bath every day? |
| 3 go to bed late? | 8 drink milk? |
| 4 cry a lot? | 9 dress yourself? |
| 5 make your bed? | 10 get pocket money? |

Revision Box

14 Choose the correct answer.

- Jacques Cousteau **B** the oceans.
 A explores B explored C is exploring
- Toby a bicycle, but now he drives a car.
 A is riding B used to ride C rides
- I an interesting book at the moment.
 A don't read B read C am reading
- He home early yesterday because he felt ill.
 A went B is going C used to go
- Mr Jones, but he does now.
 A used to travel B didn't use to travel C travelled
- I a noise, so I went to see what it was.
 A heard B hear C am hearing
- Bobby how to use a computer at present.
 A learnt B is learning C learns
- My parents to a party tonight.
 A used to go B goes C are going
- The ferry boat every day at quarter past two.
 A leaves B leave C is leaving
- I getting up early in the morning.
 A likes B don't like C doesn't like

ORAL Activity

Look at the pictures below. Picture A shows what people used to do in their free time sixty years ago and Picture B what they do nowadays. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

e.g. SA: Did people use to watch TV sixty years ago?
 SB: No, they didn't.

watch TV - dress differently - spend more time together - talk to each other a lot - go out at night much - read more



WRITING Activity

Now, using the pictures and the notes from the Oral Activity, complete the text below.

Life was different sixty years ago. People 1) (not/have) the things we have nowadays. First of all, they 2) (not/watch) TV and they 3) (talk) to each other a lot. Nowadays, people 4) (not/talk) to each other much because they 5) (spend) a lot of time watching TV. Sixty years ago, people 6) (dress) differently. For example, women 7) (wear) longer dresses and men usually 8) (wear) a suit and a tie on Sundays.

UNIT 3

Past Continuous



Were Paul and Claire working at 8 o'clock last night?
No, they weren't.
They were having dinner at a restaurant.

We form the past continuous with **was/were** (past simple of the verb to be) and the main verb with the **-ing** suffix. We form questions by putting **was/were** before the subject. We form negations by putting the word **not** after **was/were**.

Affirmative				
I	was	} studying.		
He/She/It	was			
You/We/They	were			
Interrogative				
Was	I	} studying?		
Was				he/she/it
Were				you/we/they
Negative				
	Long form	Short form	} studying.	
I	was not	wasn't		
He/She/It	was not	wasn't		
You/We/They	were not	weren't		

1 A fire broke out yesterday at Crofton Electronics. What were the people doing when the fire broke out? Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: What was Tim doing?
SB: He was sitting at his desk.

<p>1</p> <p>Tim/sit/at his desk</p>	<p>2</p> <p>Jim and Robert/ check/some reports</p>
<p>3</p> <p>Sarah/talk/on the phone</p>	<p>4</p> <p>the directors/ have/a meeting</p>
<p>5</p> <p>Mary/work/on the computer</p>	<p>6</p> <p>Kim/read/a letter</p>

2 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous.

- A: What **1** ...*was happening*... (happen) at the time of the robbery?
B: Well, I **2** (sit) in my office. I **3** (talk) to an employee. Some of the staff **4** (put) food onto the shelves. Several customers **5** (do) their shopping and a cashier **6** (stand) behind the till.
A: Can you tell me anything about the robbers?
B: Yes. They **7** (wear) black masks and they **8** (hold) guns. They **9** (shout).
A: How did they get away?
B: They drove off in a car which **10** (wait) outside.

Use

We use the past continuous:

- ◆ for an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past. We do not know when the action started or finished.



At three o'clock yesterday afternoon Mike and his son **were washing** the dog. (We do not know when they started or finished washing the dog.)

- ◆ for a past action which was in progress when another action interrupted it. We use the **past continuous** for the action in progress (longer action) and the **past simple** for the action which interrupted it (shorter action).

He **was reading** a newspaper **when** his wife **came**. (was reading = longer action; came = shorter action)



- ◆ for two or more actions which were happening at the same time in the past (simultaneous actions).



The people **were watching** while the cowboy **was riding** the bull.

- ◆ to give the background information in a story.

The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**. Tom **was driving** his old truck through the forest.



Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the past continuous include:

while, when, as, all day/night/morning, etc.

when/while/as + past continuous (longer action)
when + past simple (shorter action)

3 Match Column A with Column B.

Column A

- 1 While I was driving home,e.....
- 2 We were watching the children
- 3 He cut his finger
- 4 At eight o'clock yesterday morning
- 5 As she was crossing the street,
- 6 While they were talking,

Column B

- a as he was chopping wood.
- b he was sleeping in his bed.
- c while they were playing.
- d she slipped and fell.
- e I ran out of petrol.
- f the doorbell rang.

4 Join the sentences using *as, when* or *while*, as in the example.

- 1 Tina was cooking. She burnt herself.
...As/When/While Tina was cooking, she burnt herself. ...
...Tina was cooking when she burnt herself. ...
- 2 Laura was making some tea. She dropped the kettle.
- 3 Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden. It started raining.
- 4 Peter was driving his car. He got a flat tyre.
- 5 She was walking in the park. A dog attacked her.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past continuous. Which is the longer action in each sentence?

- 1 As I *was doing* (do) the washing-up, I *broke* (break) a glass. "*Doing the washing-up is the longer action.*"
- 2 We (walk) in the woods when the storm (begin).

- 3 John (repair) his motor bike when his mother (arrive).
- 4 I (eat) my lunch when the phone (ring).
- 5 He (ride) his bicycle to school when he (drop) his bag.
- 6 We (see) a bad accident as we (drive) to the airport.
- 7 Tom (watch) the match when the TV (break down).
- 8 We (talk) when she (come) into the room.

Short Answers

e.g. *Were you sleeping at eleven o'clock last night?*
Yes, I was.

Were you ...?	Yes, I was/we were. No, I wasn't/we weren't.
Was he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it was. No, he/she/it wasn't.
Were they ...?	Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

6 Yesterday, the people in the picture had to wait two hours for their boat which was late. What were they doing while they were waiting? Look at the picture and describe it using the past continuous.

e.g. *The two girls were playing with a ball.*



7 Look at the picture in ex. 6 again and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- 1 the two girls / play / tennis?
SA: *Were the two girls playing tennis?*
SB: *No, they weren't. They were playing volleyball.*
- 2 the young man / listen to / music?
.....
- 3 the older man / read / a book?
.....
- 4 the women / knit?
.....
- 5 the Japanese tourists / take / pictures?
.....

8 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous.

- A** Yesterday, I went for a walk in the park. While I was there, I saw lots of children who 1) *...were playing...* (play). There was a man who 2) (walk) his dogs. He 3) (throw) sticks and the dogs 4) (run) to catch them. A gardener 5) (plant) some flowers and some old ladies 6) (sit) on a park bench enjoying the warm sunshine. It was lovely.
- B** Harriet and Liam got married last weekend. It was a beautiful wedding. The bridesmaids 1) (wear) pink dresses and they 2) (all/carry) small bouquets of pink and white flowers. The photographer 3) (take) photographs and the bride's mother 4) (cry) because she was so happy. The sun 5) (shine) and the couple 6) (smile) at everyone.

9 In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- 1 at six o'clock yesterday evening?
SA: *What were you doing at six o'clock yesterday evening?*
SB: *I was doing my English homework.*
- 2 at two o'clock this morning?
- 3 at half past nine last Sunday evening?
- 4 an hour ago?
- 5 at noon last Saturday?

Past Continuous versus Past Simple

Past Continuous

We use the past continuous for:

- an action which was in progress (was happening) at a stated time in the past. We do not know when the action started or finished.



At nine o'clock yesterday morning, the plane **was flying** to Tahiti from New York. (We do not know when it left or reached its destination.)

- two actions which were happening at the same time in the past.



He **was listening** carefully while they **were explaining** the plan to him.

Past Simple

We use the past simple for:

- a complete action at a stated time in the past.



The plane **landed** at the airport at eight o'clock yesterday morning. (The time is stated. The action is complete. The plane landed.)

- actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.



First she **read** the advertisement and then she **called** the company.

10 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous or the past simple.

- We ...**went**... (go) swimming every week when we were young.
- Simon..... (dance) when he fell and hurt his leg.
- Why (you/laugh) all through your history lesson yesterday?
- I (drink) a glass of milk every day when I was a child.
- Todd often (ride) horses when he was a boy.
- Bill (write) a letter when his mother came home.
- It (rain) while I was waiting for the bus.
- I(play) the guitar when I was young, but I don't any more.
- Debbie(sing) in the school choir many years ago.
- Liz (clean) the windows when I saw her.

11 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous or the past simple.

- A Steve 1) ...**had**... (have) an accident yesterday. He 2) (drive) his car when a bird 3) (fly) into the windscreen. He 4) (try) to stop quickly but he 5) (crash) into a wall. Luckily, he 6) (not/be) hurt.
- B Last week, I 1) (go) to a talk by a famous writer. He 2) (talk) about his new book when I 3) (arrive). He 4) (give) such an interesting talk that I 5) (be) disappointed when it 6) (end).
- C Julie 1) (tidy) her bedroom last weekend. While she 2) (tidy) it, she 3) (find) some of the toys she 4) (have) when she was a child. She 5) (not/want) to throw them away, so she 6) (put) them in a box and 7) (store) them in the attic.

12

Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous or the past simple. Then, put the pictures in the right order.



It 1) ...*was*... (be) a beautiful spring morning when Emma and her father 2) (decide) to visit Seaton Castle. The sun 3) (shine) and the birds 4) (sing). Emma 5) (feel) very excited. The castle 6) (be) very old and made of stone. They 7) (climb) the steps to the top of the tower. While they 8) (admire) the view, they 9) (hear) some noises. They 10) (look) around but they 11) (not/see) anybody. 'That's funny,' said Emma. 'I 12) (think) I 13) (see) someone standing over there.' After a while they 14) (decide) to visit the cellar of the castle. Emma 15) (examine) an old barrel when she 16) (hear) the door of the cellar close behind them. 'Dad,' she 17) (say), 'don't close the door!' 'But, I 18) (not/close) it, dear,' her father said. Emma 19) (turn) around and 20) (see) a shadow on the wall. She 21) (know) then that the ghost of Seaton Castle 22) (watch) them!

13

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

Dear Rick,

I'm writing to you from my hotel in Switzerland.

I'm having a lovely time here but you can't imagine what 1) ...*happened*... (happen) to me yesterday. I 2) (be) on the mountain with my friends and we 3) (have) a lovely time because the snow 4) (be) perfect for skiing. Unfortunately the sun 5) (shine) on the snow, so it 6) (be) difficult to see. Suddenly, I 7) (hit) a rock and I 8) (fall) over. Luckily I 9) (not/be) seriously hurt — I just 10) (get) a few bruises. Now I'm trying to be more careful!

I'll see you when I get back.

Best wishes,
Kevin

14

Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Philip was washing the car while the fire started.
- 2 Neil was studying when his sister was listening to music.
- 3 Harriet was opening the door and walked into the house.
- 4 We were having lunch at a lovely restaurant every day when we were on holiday.
- 5 Brian drank tea at five o'clock yesterday afternoon.
- 6 Dad was repairing the TV while Mum cooked dinner.
- 7 I was going to the cinema last Saturday.
- 8 I was buying a new dress for my party yesterday.
- 9 While Jeff built the garden shed, he hurt himself.
- 10 While the teacher were speaking, the students were listening to him.

Revision Box

15 Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous, present simple, past simple or past continuous.

- I *was cleaning* (clean) the windows when the telephone (ring).
- 'What is that noise?' 'James (repair) his bike at the moment.'
- He (read) a book when his mother (call) him.
- '..... (be) you busy?' 'No, what (you/want) me to do?'
- They (sing) while we (play) some music.
- Susan is a nurse. She usually (work) at night.

16 Choose the correct answer.

- The earth ...**B**... round the sun.
A moved B moves C is moving
- Sarah a new car last week.
A is buying B buy C bought
- I when suddenly the dog began to bark.
A study B studied C was studying
- They hard at the moment.
A are working B were working C worked
- I home from work when it began to snow.
A am walking B walk C was walking
- Jane the receiver and dialled the number.
A lifts B was lifting C lifted
- Walt Disney Mickey Mouse.
A was creating B creates C created
- Helen to the gym every day, but now she doesn't.
A used to go B didn't use to go C was going
- We for a new house at the moment.
A are looking B look C looked
- Ted his father in the garden every Sunday.
A was helping B helps C is helping
- The ferry to Calais at 3 o'clock every day.
A leave B leaves C was leaving
- You your music too loud! I can't stand it!
A were always playing B always play C are always playing

ORAL Activity

Look at the picture. It shows what the people were doing/did when a bank robbery happened. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

- e.g. SA: *What was the manager doing?*
SB: *He was talking on the phone.*
SA: *What did he do when he saw the robbers?*
SB: *He stood up.*

manager / talk on the phone / stand up
cashier / count some money / put his hands up
child / sit on a chair / start to cry
old lady / wait in the queue / faint



WRITING Activity

Imagine that one of the people who saw the robbery is writing a letter to a friend to tell him/her what was happening/ happened on that day. Using the picture and your notes from the Oral Activity, complete the letter.

Dear (friend's name),

I'm writing to tell you what happened to me yesterday while I was depositing some money in the bank.

I was standing in the queue when two bank robbers suddenly appeared at the door.

.....
.....

UNIT 4

Present Perfect Simple



Bob and Mary **have been** on holiday for a week. They've **visited** a lot of tropical beaches and they've **swum** in the blue sea. **Have they bought** any souvenirs yet? No, they haven't.

We form the present perfect simple with the auxiliary verb **have/has** and the **past participle**. We form the past participle of regular verbs by adding **-ed** to the verb.
e.g. play - played

We form the past participle of irregular verbs differently.
e.g. see - seen (See list of irregular verbs on page 152.)

We form questions by putting **have/has** before the subject. e.g. **Have they read** the book?

We form negations by putting **not** between have/has and the past participle.

e.g. He **has not/hasn't repaired** the TV yet.

Affirmative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	have	've	} finished/ left.
He/She/It	has	's	
You/We/They	have	've	
Interrogative			
Have	I	} finished/ left?	
Has	he/she/it		
Have	you/we/they		
Negative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	have not	haven't	} finished/ left.
He/She/It	has not	hasn't	
You/We/They	have not	haven't	

1

Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.

- read / a newspaper / yesterday
...I haven't read a newspaper since yesterday...
- have / a break / this morning
- travel / abroad / last summer
- watch / TV / last night
- buy / a present / December
- write / a letter / Christmas
- eat / dinner / at a restaurant / last month

Short Answers

e.g. Has she called her parents? Yes, she has.







Have you ...?	Yes, I/we have.
	No, I/we haven't.
Has he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it has.
	No, he/she/it hasn't.
Have they ...?	Yes, they have.
	No, they haven't.

2

Sam hasn't seen John for a long time. He wants to know what John has done since they last met. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

SA: *Have you found a new job?*

SB: *Yes, I have.*

	find / a new job?	✓
	buy / a bigger car?	✓
	move / house?	✗
	get / married?	✗
	finish / your studies?	✓
	start / taking karate lessons?	✓

Use

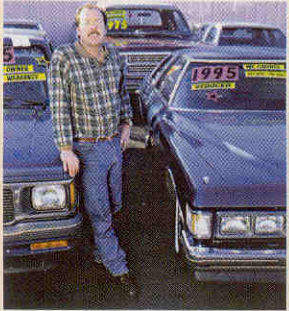
We use the present perfect simple:

- ◆ for actions which happened at an unstated time in the past. The exact time is not mentioned because it is not important. We put more emphasis on the action.



Kim has bought a new mobile phone. (When did she buy it? We don't mention the exact time because it is not important. What is important is the fact that she's got a new mobile phone.)

- ◆ for actions which started in the past and are still continuing in the present.



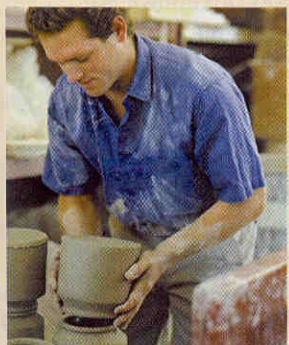
He has been a car salesman since 1990. (He started working as a car salesman in 1990 and he still is a car salesman.)

- ◆ for actions which have recently finished and their results are visible in the present.



They have done their shopping. (We can see that they have finished their shopping because they're leaving the supermarket and there are bags in their trolley.)

- ◆ with today, this morning/afternoon, etc. when these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.



He has made ten pots this morning. (It is still morning so this period of time is not finished.)

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the present perfect simple include:

for, since, already, just, always, recently, ever, how long, yet, lately, never, so far, today, this morning/afternoon/week/month/year, etc.

Affirmative

- **for** e.g. I have known them **for** six years.
- **since** e.g. She has been ill **since** Monday.
- **already** e.g. We have **already** eaten our lunch.
- **just** e.g. I have **just** posted the letter.
- **always** e.g. She has **always** wanted to travel abroad.
- **recently** e.g. He has **recently** published a book.

Questions

- **ever** e.g. Have you **ever** met anybody famous?
- **how long** e.g. **How long** have you lived here?
- **yet** e.g. Has Paul left **yet**?
- **lately** e.g. Have you seen any good films **lately**?

Negations

- **for** e.g. I haven't talked to him **for** days.
- **since** e.g. They haven't been abroad **since** 1990.
- **yet** e.g. She hasn't answered my letter **yet**.
- **lately** e.g. I haven't seen John **lately**.
- **never** e.g. They have **never** worked abroad.

3

Fill in *since* or *for*.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 <i>for</i> ten years | 6 six months |
| 2 I was five | 7 lunch-time |
| 3 8 o'clock | 8 we moved |
| 4 two hours | to this town |
| 5 ages | 9 three minutes |

4

Match Column A with Column B.

Column A	Column B
1 Jerry hasn't typed	a visited Japan?
2 She has always	b talked to them.
3 Have you ever	c the letter yet.
4 We've already	d to New York twice
5 Tim has already	this year.
been	e known them?
6 How long have you	f wanted to be a singer.

5 Fill in the gaps with *recently, how long, yet, always, ever, already, since or never*.

- 1 A: ...*How long*... has she been an air hostess?
B: she left school.
- 2 A: Jonathan has moved house
B: What's his new address?
- 3 A: I can't phone you. I haven't got a phone
B: Well, I'll come to your house instead.
- 4 A: Has she finished her homework?
B: Yes. She's finished it.
- 5 A: He eats a lot of vegetables, doesn't he?
B: Yes. He's liked vegetables.
- 6 A: Have you been to China?
B: No, I have been there.

6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present perfect simple.

- 1 A: Have you ever given an interview?
B: No, I ...*have never done*... (never/do) that.
- 2 A: What time does the train leave?
B: It (just/leave)!
- 3 A: Is the new restaurant good?
B: I (not/eat) there yet.
- 4 A: Shall I do the shopping now?
B: No, I (already/do) it.
- 5 A: Julia, are you ready?
B: No, I (not/dry) my hair yet.
- 6 A: Would you like to have lunch with me?
B: No, thanks. I (already/eat).

Have gone (to) - Have been (to)



- ◆ They **have gone to** the cinema. (This means that they haven't come back yet. They are still at the cinema.)
- ◆ She **has been to** London. (This means that she has visited London; she is not there now. She has come back.)

7 Fill in the gaps with *have/has been (to) or have/has gone (to)*.

- 1 'Where are Tom and Lucy?' 'They ...*have gone to*... the theatre.'
- 2 I don't live in London. I ...*have*... only ...*been*... there once.
- 3 I am alone in the house. My parents ...*have*... on holiday.
- 4 'Is Philip at home?' 'No, he ...*has gone to*... work.'
- 5 My friend wants us to go on holiday to Madrid this summer, but I ...*have*... already ...*been*... there.
- 6 Anita has just come home. She ...*has been*... the theatre.
- 7 'Where are Julia and Dave?' 'They ...*have*... the sports centre with their friends.'

8 Fill in the gaps with *have/has been (to) or have/has gone (to)*.

- A: Hi, Roger! Where is everybody? The house is very quiet.
- B: Well, Mum 1) ...*has gone to*... the cinema with Mavis.
- A: How about your sister?
- B: She's having a shower right now because she 2) the gym.
- A: I 3) the gym twice this week. It's really exhausting.
- B: As for Dad, he 4) the library to get some books.
- A: So, how about going to that new café that's just opened near the park?
- B: Oh, I 5) there. It isn't that great. Why don't we call Steve and go to the basketball court?
- A: Okay, let's do that instead.

Past Simple versus Present Perfect Simple

Past Simple

We use the past simple for:

- an action which happened at a stated time in the past.



Ed Prior **won** his first gold medal in 1992. (When? In 1992. The time is mentioned.)

- an action which started and finished in the past.



Annette **had** a cold for two days. (She hasn't got a cold any more.)

Present Perfect Simple

We use the present perfect simple for:

- an action which happened at an unstated time in the past.



Ed Prior **has won** a lot of medals. (When? We don't know. The time is not stated.)

- an action which started in the past and is still continuing in the present.



Lucy **has had** a cold for three days. (She has still got a cold.)

9 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.

- A: I **...went...** (go) to the new gym yesterday.
B: It's good, isn't it? I **...went...** (go) there a few times.
- A: **Have you written** (you/write) to Simon lately?
B: Yes, I **...wrote...** (write) him a letter last week.
- A: How long **...have you been...** (you/be) married?
B: Only for six months. I **...got...** (get) married last December.
- A: I **...haven't seen...** (not/see) Sam for a long time.
B: Really? I **...saw...** (see) him yesterday at the swimming pool.
- A: **...have you typed...** (you/type) the report yet?
B: Yes, I **...finished...** (finish) it half an hour ago.
- A: Mary **...has known...** (know) Steven for six years.
B: When **...did they meet...** (they/meet)?
A: When they **...were at university...** (be) at university together.
- A: **...have you ever played...** (you/ever/play) rugby?
B: Yes, I have. I **...played...** (play) for the first time last week.
- A: James **...wrote...** (write) a new book last year.
B: I know. I **...have read...** (read) some great reviews about it in the newspaper.

10 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

- SA: *Have you ever been to the USA?*
SB: *Yes, I have.*
SA: *When did you go?*
SB: *I went in 1996.*



go/the USA (When)



plant/a tree (Where)



sing/in a choir (When)



save/your money (Why)
meet/a politician (Who)



travel/by boat (When)



11

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.

Dear Margaret,

Thank you very much for your letter which I 1) *received* (receive) last week. I 2) *am* (be) really happy to hear from you after all this time.

I've got a lot of news to tell you about myself. I 3) *got* (get) a new job nine months ago. I work as a reporter for our local TV station now. I 4) *have* (have) many interesting experiences so far. When I first 5) *started* (start) work, the manager 6) *asked* (ask) me to interview our old school headmaster. He 7) *was* (be) so surprised to see me with a microphone in my hand!

Last month, a fire 8) *broke out* (break out) in a big factory in the area. I 9) *was* (be) the only reporter who 10) *managed* (manage) to talk to the owner! That 11) *made* (make) me feel very proud.

As you can see, I enjoy my job very much. I 12) *meet* (meet) a lot of important people and I 13) *have* (have) the opportunity to see lots of new places. I 14) *bought* (buy) a new car because my old one 15) *broke down* (break down) a couple of weeks ago.

I have to go now because they 16) *informed* (just/inform) me that I have to fly by helicopter to Middleford. I have to talk to people whose homes were damaged by the storm which 17) *hit* (hit) the area last night. You see, I don't have a moment's rest!

Keep in touch.

Love,
Rosie

12

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.

A: Hello, Billy. I 1) *haven't seen* (not/see) you for a long time.

B: Yes, I 2) *am* (be) very busy recently.

A: Really? Tell me what you 3) *did* (do) since we last 4) *saw* (see) each other.

B: Well, I 5) *got* (get) my degree last month and then I 6) *moved* (move) house.

A: When 7) *did you move* (you/move)?

B: Last week, but I 8) *haven't unpacked* (not/unpack) everything yet.

A: I 9) *phoned* (phone) you on Tuesday but there 10) *was* (be) no answer.

B: I 11) *am* (be) busy at my new house then.

A: Never mind, I only 12) *wanted* (want) to invite you to a party next week at my house.

B: Great! Thank you.

13

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.

1 Mr and Mrs Patel *won* (win) two free tickets to Paris in a TV show last week.

2 First, Robert *brushed* (brush) his teeth, then he *went* (go) to bed.

3 *Have you ever* (you/ever/see) a lion? 'Yes, I saw one when I *went* (go) to Kenya in 1996.'

4 I *haven't seen* (not/see) my family for two years.

5 'Where's John?' 'He *has gone* (go) fishing for the day with his father.'

6 My sister *hasn't played* (not/play) the violin since she was twelve.

7 I *have already seen* (already/see) this film. Let's watch something else.

8 Last week, Fred *fell* (fall) off a ladder and *broke* (break) his arm.

9 I *have never heard* (never/hear) such a moving song before.

10 Jennifer *has always wanted* (always/want) to get Harrison Ford's autograph.

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 He has never travelled by boat before.

time It's the **first time he has travelled** by boat.

2 Sharon hasn't been to a party for two months.

went The last time **Sharon went to a party** was two months ago.

3 It's a long time since Mary visited Helen.

for Mary **has not visited Helen for** a long time.

14

Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold.

1 Kate hasn't phoned her mother for a week.
phoned The last time *Kate phoned her mother was* a week ago.

2 They have never visited Vienna before.
time It's the Vienna.

3 It's a long time since I ate out.
for I a long time.

4 Roger hasn't played tennis for six weeks.
played The last time tennis was six weeks ago.

5 It's years since Mr Smith went on holiday.
has Mr Smith for years.

6 John hasn't been to his country house since Easter.
went The last time John was at Easter.

15 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 We have bought a new sofa last month.
- 2 Jim lives in Germany for three years.
- 3 My father has went fishing.
- 4 She is just moved house.
- 5 We have eaten lunch at one o'clock.
- 6 Sophie has do her homework.
- 7 Ann and Tim have got married ten years ago.
- 8 I am at school since nine o'clock.

Revision Box

16 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

Dear Bert,

I 1) ...*'m writing*... (write) to tell you what a great time we 2) (have) at the Sour Grapes concert last weekend. It's a pity you 3) (not/come).

The concert 4) (take) place in the football stadium near the university. There 5) (be) about 80,000 people there. While we 6) (wait) to get in, we 7) (see) the members of the group arrive in a big black limo. They 8) (have) bodyguards with them.

Anyway, we 9) (find) our seats and 10) (wait) impatiently for the concert to begin. The Sour Grapes 11) (recently/record) an album which 12) (become) very successful.

The concert 13) (last) for two and a half hours. I 14) (send) you some photos that Alex 15) (take) when we 16) (be) there. We 17) (hear) that the Sour Grapes 18) (give) a big concert in London next month. Perhaps you can see them there.

Best Wishes,
Roger

ORAL Activity

Read the notes about Paul Vern who is a famous runner. Make sentences using the prompts given as in the example.

e.g. Paul Vern **was born** in Sussex.



- be born / in Sussex
- always want / be a runner
- start running / at the age of seven
- win / the school championship / when / be /15 years old
- join / the national team / four years ago
- win / several medals / so far
- recently receive / the "Athlete of the Year" award
- get married / last month
- already take part / in two international championships

WRITING Activity

Imagine you want to write an article about Paul Vern for your school newspaper. Use your notes from the Oral Activity to write a short text. You can begin like this:

Paul Vern is a famous runner who competes internationally. He was born in Sussex.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 5

The Future

Future Simple



A: I'm sure we'll **have** a great time at Joan's party tomorrow night.
 B: Yes, I agree. All our friends **will be** there.
 A: **Will** your father **let** you take the car?
 B: No, I'm afraid he **won't**.

We form the future simple with **will** and the **bare infinitive**. Will is used for all persons.

e.g. Susan **will post** the letters tomorrow morning.

We form questions by putting **will** before the subject.

e.g. **Will** Kate lend you her book?

We form negations by putting **not** after **will**. The short form of will not is **won't**.

e.g. He **will not/won't pay** the bill.

Affirmative

	Long form	Short form	
I	will	'll	} phone.
He/She/It	will	'll	
You/We/They	will	'll	

Interrogative

Will	I	} phone?
Will	he/she/it	
Will	you/we/they	

Negative

	Long form	Short form	
I	will not	won't	} phone.
He/She/It	will not	won't	
You/We/They	will not	won't	

Use

We use the future simple:

- ◆ for future actions which may or may not happen.



We'll **visit** Disney World one day.

- ◆ for predictions about the future.

Life **will be** better fifty years from now.

- ◆ for threats or warnings.



Stop or I'll **shoot**.

- ◆ for promises or on-the-spot decisions.



I'll **help** you with your homework.

- ◆ with the verbs **hope, think, believe, expect**, etc., the expressions **I'm sure, I'm afraid**, etc. and the adverbs **probably, perhaps**, etc.

I **think** he **will** support me.

He **will probably** go to work.

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the future simple include:

tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week/month/year, tonight, soon, in a week/month/year, etc.

1 What will life be like in the 21st century? Look at the prompts and make sentences using *will* or *won't*, as in the example.

- 1 People / live longer ✓
People will live longer.
- 2 Robots / do most of the work ✓
- 3 People / use electric cars X
- 4 Pollution / disappear ✓
- 5 People / die of serious diseases X
- 6 Children / stop going to school X
- 7 People / go on holiday to the moon ✓

Will / Shall

We use:

◆ **Will you ...?** to ask someone to do something for us (request).

e.g. *Will you post these letters for me, please?*
(= *Can you post these letters for me, please?*)

◆ **Shall I ...?** when we offer to do something for someone else.

e.g. *Shall I help you clean your room?*
(= *Do you want me to help you clean your room?*)

◆ **Shall we ...?** to make a suggestion.

e.g. *Shall we go to the theatre tonight?*
(= *Why don't we go to the theatre tonight?*)

2 Ask questions using the prompts, as in the example.

- 1 The garden is very untidy. (I / cut / the grass)
Shall I cut the grass?
- 2 It's a lovely evening. (we / go for / a walk)
Shall we go for a walk?
- 3 I need a hot drink. (I / make / some tea)
Shall I make some tea?
- 4 It's very quiet in here. (I / turn on / the radio)
Shall I turn on the radio?
- 5 The Smiths are back. (we / visit / them)
Shall we visit them?
- 6 I've cut my finger. (I / get / a plaster)
Shall I get a plaster?

3 What does *will/shall* express in each sentence? Underline the correct meaning.

- 1 Tidy your room or I won't let you go to the party.
(threat/request)
- 2 Your daughter will have a very successful career.
(warning/prediction)

- 3 Shall I carry your shopping bags for you?
(offer/suggestion)
- 4 I'll buy a present for my mother.
(on-the-spot decision/prediction)
- 5 Will you take out the rubbish, please?
(suggestion/request)

4 Replace the words in italics with *Will you*, *Shall I* or *Shall we*, as in the example.

- 1 *Why don't we spend our holidays in Spain this summer?*
Shall we spend our holidays in Spain this summer?
- 2 *Do you want me to go to the supermarket for you?*
Shall I go to the supermarket for you?
- 3 *Can you pick up the children from school for me, please?*
Will you pick up the children from school for me?
- 4 *Why don't we listen to that new CD?*
Shall we listen to the new CD?
- 5 *Do you want me to book the tickets for you?*
Shall I book the tickets for you?
- 6 *Can you take my jacket to the dry-cleaner's for me, please?*
Will you take my jacket to the dry-cleaner's for me?

Short Answers

e.g. *Will you pay the bills? Yes, I will.*

Will you ...?	Yes, I/we will. No, I/we won't.
Will he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it will. No, he/she/it won't.
Will they ...?	Yes, they will. No, they won't.

5 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: *Will you have a party on your birthday this year?*
SB: *Yes, I will. / No, I won't.*

- 1 have a party on your birthday this year?
- 2 go to university when you finish school?
- 3 travel abroad if you have enough money?
- 4 go out with your friends at the weekend?
- 5 watch TV this evening?
- 6 study hard for next term's exams?
- 7 learn how to drive next summer?

6

Answer the following questions about yourself using *I think/I hope/I expect I'll ...* or *I'm sure/I'm afraid I'll ...*, as in the example.

- Where will you be at 5 o'clock tomorrow afternoon?
I expect I'll be at home.
- Where will you go at the weekend?
- Where will you spend your holidays?
- What will you do if you fail your exams?
- When will you buy your own car?
- Who will you ask for help if you are in trouble?

NOTE:

We do not use the future simple after: **while, before, until, as soon as, after, if** and **when**. We use the present simple instead.

e.g. *I'll make a phone call while I wait for you.*
(NOT: ... while I will wait for you.)

"When" can be followed by the future simple if it is used as a **question word**.

e.g. *When will you return?*
I don't know when Helen will be back.

"When" is followed by the present simple if it is used as a **time word**.

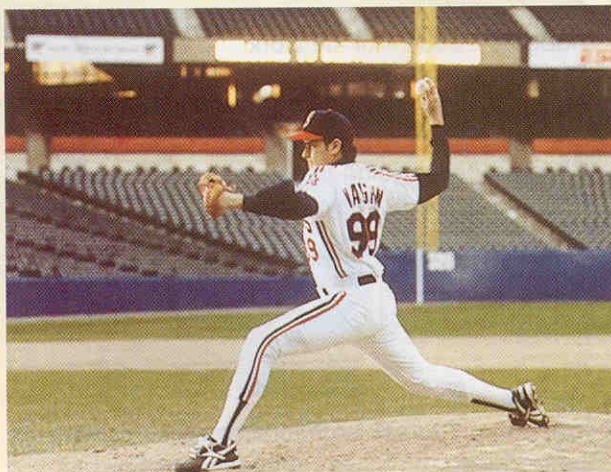
e.g. *Please phone me when you finish work.*

7

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the future simple.

- They ...*will/'ll go*... (go) to school when they (be) five years old.
- I (call) you before I (leave) for Paris.
- He (write) a letter to her every day while he (be) at college.
- We (do) our homework when we (get) home.
- John (fix) the tap as soon as he (come) back from work.
- When (you/pack) your suitcase?
- I (not/do) anything until you (be) ready.
- When (you/phone) me?
- I promise I (buy) you a present when I (return) from my holiday.
- When she (pass) her driving test, she (buy) a car.

Be Going To



He is going to throw the ball.

We use be going to:

◆ for plans and intentions we have about the near future.

e.g. *Bob is going to drive to Manchester tomorrow morning.*

◆ when there is evidence that something is going to happen in the near future.

e.g. *Look at that tree. It is going to fall down.*

Affirmative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	am	'm	} going to leave.
He/She/It	is	's	
You/We/They	are	're	
Interrogative			
Am	I	} going to leave?	
Is	he/she/it		
Are	you/we/they		
Negative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	am not	'm not	} going to leave.
He/She/It	is not	isn't	
You/We/They	are not	aren't	

8 Fill in each gap with *be going to* and one of the verbs from the list.

rescue, explode, jump, fall



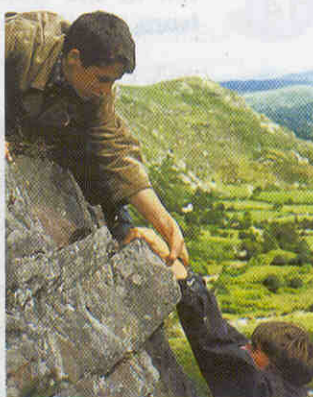
1 She ...*is going to jump*... out of the plane.



2 The car into the river.



3 The aeroplane
.....
.....



4 He the boy.

9 Jennifer and Mark are going to spend their holidays in different places this summer. Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

SA: *Is Jennifer going to take her passport?*

SB: *Yes, she is.*

	JENNIFER	MARK
take/passport	✓	✓
travel/by train	✗	✓
buy/souvenirs	✓	✓
spend/much money	✓	✗
hire/a car	✓	✗

10 Fill in the gaps with *will/shall* or the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in brackets.

A: (1) ...*Shall we go*... (we/go) to the football match on Saturday?

B: I can't. I (2) (help) my sister.

A: Oh yes. She is moving house, isn't she?

B: That's right. (3) (you/help) us?

A: Yes, I'd like to. What time (4) (I/come) to your house?

B: I'm not sure yet. I (5) (probably/phone) you on Friday to tell you. Is that alright?

A: Yes. I think I (6) (be) in then.

B: Okay. (7) (we/go) for a walk now?

A: I'd rather not. Look at those black clouds.

It (8) (rain). Let's stay in and watch a video.

B: Great idea.

11 Fill in the gaps with *shall, will* or the correct form of *be going to*.

1 A: The shops are closed tomorrow.

B: I ...*will*... buy bread and milk today then.

2 A: we tell Mr Peck about the accident?

B: That's a good idea. Maybe he can help.

3 A: It's too dark in here to read.

B: Is it? I turn on the light.

4 A: Please come and see us.

B: We *will* visit you soon, that's a promise.

5 A: I wear a jumper or a coat?

B: It's very cold. Take your coat.

6 A: Can we go out to play, Mum?

B: No, we have dinner now.

Short Answers

e.g. Are you going to call him? Yes, I am.

Are you ...?

Yes, I am/we are.

No, I'm not/we aren't.

Is he/she/it ...?

Yes, he/she/it is.

No, he/she/it isn't.

Are they ...?

Yes, they are.

No, they aren't.

Compare the following examples

We can use the **future simple**, **be going to**, **present continuous** or **present simple** to talk about future actions.

- He'll sell his car.
(will: the future action may or may not happen)
- She's going to study abroad next year.
(be going to: to express intention)
- They're leaving for Mexico tomorrow.
(present continuous: for an arranged action)
- The bus leaves at nine o'clock.
(present simple: for timetables)

12

A Jonathan is not satisfied with his life as it is. He has already decided to change a number of things. Look at the prompts and say what he intends to do, as in the example.

- move to the city centre
He is going to move to the city centre.



- sell his car



- buy a bigger house



- marry Susan



- apply for a job with a law firm



B Now look at Jonathan's diary. What has he already arranged to do? Make sentences, as in the example.

- Monday, 8th April — move to/the city centre
He's moving to the city centre on Monday, 8th April.
- Tuesday, 9th April — Mr Brown come/collect/the car
- Wednesday, 10th April — sign the contract/for a new house
- Friday, 12th April — have an interview with Mr Ford at 10 o'clock
- Sunday, 20th June — get married

13

Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous or the present simple.

- "...*Is Gordon coming*... (Gordon/come) with us tonight?" "No, he *isn't*... (be/not)"
- My sister (go) to university in September.
- What time (the play/start) tomorrow?
- Natalie (have) a birthday party on Saturday.
- Megan (sing) in the school concert tomorrow night.
- The flight to Berlin (leave) at six o'clock.
- The Browns (move) to their new house this weekend.
- What time (the ferry/reach) Calais tomorrow afternoon?

14

Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct tense.

walk, come, post




15 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Will I take the children to the playground for you?
- 2 I'll call you when I will finish work.
- 3 Will you to clean the carpet, please?
- 4 The film is starting at 8 o'clock.
- 5 Wait here until he will come.
- 6 The Queen won't not attend the parade tomorrow.

Revision Box

16 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.



Dear Martha,

I 1) ...'m writing... (write) to tell you my good news.

I 2) (save) enough money from my part-time job and, at last, I 3) (open) a flower shop. My father 4) (own) a shop years ago and he 5) (give) me some advice and suggestions. He 6) (think) that my shop 7) (be) a success, because there isn't another flower shop in the area.

The shop isn't ready yet. My brother 8) (already/paint) the inside of the shop and tomorrow he 9) (paint) the outside. I 10) (need) to buy a new sign. My mother 11) (want) me to call the shop "Rose", but I 12) (still/think) about it. Anyway, I just hope the local people 13) (like) it.

I 14) (start) work next Monday.

I 15) (probably/phone) you some time next week if I 16) (have) time. Wish me luck.

Best wishes,
Nicky

ORAL Activity

Rob Brown and Molly Gould are opera singers. A reporter has interviewed them about their summer plans. Look at the table and, in pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.

e.g. SA: Is Rob going to give any concerts in the summer?
SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to give any concerts in the summer?
SA: Yes, she is.



	Rob Brown	Molly Gould
• give / concerts	✓	✓
• go / to India	✓	✗
• appear / in a TV show	✗	✓
• go on / holiday in August	✓	✓
• take part / in charity events	✓	✓
• sing / at the Queen Mother's birthday celebrations	✗	✗
• make / a record	✓	✗
• sing / in a rock opera	✗	✓

WRITING Activity

Look at your notes from the Oral Activity above and complete the newspaper article about Rob Brown and Molly Gould.

Rob Brown and Molly Gould, up-and-coming opera singers, talked to our reporter, Emma Smith, yesterday. She asked them about their future plans, and this is what she found out:

Rob and Molly are going to give concerts in the summer. Rob

.....

.....

.....

Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)

1 Rewrite the sentences putting the adverb in brackets in the correct place.

- 1 I go to bed after midnight. (seldom)
I seldom go to bed after midnight.
- 2 I don't drink tea in the morning. (often)
- 3 She washes the dishes after dinner. (usually)
- 4 I eat in restaurants. (rarely)
- 5 Do they go for a walk on Sunday afternoons? (often)
- 6 Do you visit your grandparents on Saturdays? (usually)
- 7 Mary is late for meetings. (never)
- 8 They don't go abroad on holiday. (usually)

2 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.

- A: Excuse me. What time **1** ...*does the bus for Plymouth leave*...? (the bus for Plymouth/leave)
 B: It **2** (leave) in half an hour. **3** (you/go) to Plymouth too?
 A: Yes. I **4** (visit) my granddaughter. She **5** (live) there. And you?
 B: I **6** (live) there too. I **7** (do) a course at the college.
 A: What subject **8** (you/study)?
 B: Tourism.
 A: That's interesting.
 B: I **9** (come) here twice a week because I **10** (work) in a hotel at the moment. It's work experience.
 A: Yes, I **11** (think) that is very important. **12** (you/like) the work?
 B: Yes, I **13** (love) it. Ah, look! Here comes the bus!

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

- 1 He ...*was watching*... (watch) TV when the telephone ...*rang*... (ring).
- 2 I (clean) the house while he (work) in the garden.
- 3 When we (find) the cat it (play) under the bed.
- 4 Joan (have) a shower when the window cleaner (come).

- 5 Grandma (knit) while Grandad (smoke) his pipe.
- 6 When I (arrive) home, Father (paint) the front door.
- 7 Bob and Sally (walk) when it (start) to rain.
- 8 What (you/talk) about when I (come) in?
- 9 I (read) my newspaper when they (knock) on the door.
- 10 As Fiona (wash) the glass, she (cut) her finger.
- 11 Mother (break) the vase while she (dust) it.
- 12 My brother (build) a sandcastle while I (swim) in the sea.

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.



Well-known pop singer Zippy Spring **1** ...*has recently signed*... (recently/sign) a new record deal with Star Records in London.

Zippy's success **2** (begin) five years ago when he **3** (record) a song which **4** (go) to the top of the charts. However, he **5** (have) a car accident six months ago and **6** (stay) in hospital for a long time.

He **7** (make) his first public appearance three weeks ago and **8** (thank) his fans for all their love and support.

The music he plays **9** (be) popular with older people since the beginning of his career, but recently younger people **10** (start) to take an interest too.

Zippy only **11** (sign) the deal last week but he **12** (already/write) a number of songs for his new record. He **13** (just/announce) that he **14** (start) to plan his next European tour.

5 Fill in the gaps with *has/have been (to)* or *has/have gone (to)*.

- 1 A: I ...*have*... never ...*been to*... Austria, but I would love to go.
B: I there three times. It's a beautiful country.
- 2 A: you the Italian restaurant in town?
B: No, but Pauline there twice. She said it was lovely.
- 3 A: Are Mandy and Kate coming to the cinema?
B: No, they out with their cousins.
- 4 A: Where is Dad?
B: He work.
A: But it's Sunday. He doesn't work on Sunday!

6 Fill in the gaps with *already, yet, ever, never, just, so far, since, how long, always or for*. Some of them can be used more than once.



- A: 1) ...*How long*... have you been in Rome?
B: I've been here 2) last week. What about you?
A: I've been here 3) only three days. Which places have you visited 4) ?
B: Well, I've 5) visited the Vatican museum twice and I've spent a whole morning in the Piazza di Spagna.
A: I haven't been to the Vatican 6), but I intend to. Have you eaten at a traditional restaurant 7) ?
B: No, I haven't. But I've 8) visited Fontana di Trevi.
A: Oh, yes. I've 9) wanted to go there and throw a coin in the water! Have you 10) been to Venice?
B: No, I have 11) been there, but I've 12) arranged to spend two days there before I return home.

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or future simple.

- 1 I ...*will/'ll help*... (help) you with the shopping before I (go) to the gym.
- 2 I (not/be) at home when my parents (have) the dinner party.
- 3 Karen (go) to the airport after she (finish) work on Friday night.
- 4 When we (arrive) on the island, we (go) straight to the beach.
- 5 They (buy) a new car when they (sell) their old one.
- 6 When Bob and Marie (get) married next month, they (move) into their new house.

8 Choose the correct item.

- 1 We ...*B*... on holiday next weekend.
A go B are going C goes
- 2 James is a good student. He his homework every evening.
A do B is doing C does
- 3 I this film. Let's watch something else.
A have seen B saw C am seeing
- 4 Fred fell off the ladder while he the ceiling.
A used to paint B was painting C painted
- 5 Ted his car last month.
A sold B has sold C is selling
- 6 The sun every morning.
A is rising B rises C was rising
- 7 I my first cassette player when I was eighteen.
A have bought B am buying C bought
- 8 Donna her hair. It is still wet.
A has just washed B is washing C washes
- 9 Jennifer eat vegetables, but now she does.
A used to B didn't use to C doesn't

9 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Peter plays football at the moment.
- 2 My parents have bought a new fridge yesterday.
- 3 Sarah was writing three letters so far today.
- 4 I am going to the gym every Tuesday.
- 5 I expect I go shopping on Saturday.
- 6 Do you come with us tomorrow morning?
- 7 Did you see my dog? He's run away.
- 8 Mandy will buy a car as soon as she will pass her driving test.

UNIT 6

Relatives



A doctor is a person **who/that** treats sick people.



Dogs are animals **which/that** we can keep as pets.



This is a couple **whose** favourite winter sport is skiing.

- ◆ Relative pronouns (**who, which, whose, that**) introduce relative clauses. We use relative clauses to identify the noun in the main clause.

e.g. The man **who owns the shop** is French.



(The relative clause identifies which man we are talking about.)

- ◆ We use **who/that** instead of subject pronouns (I, you, he, etc.) to refer to people.

e.g. The girl — **she** lives next door — is from India.

↓
 The girl **who/that** lives next door is from India.

- ◆ We use **which/that** to refer to objects or animals.

e.g. The horse — **it** won the race — is black.

↓
 The horse **which/that** won the race is black.

- ◆ We use **whose** instead of possessive adjectives (my, your, his, etc.) with people, objects and animals in order to show possession.

e.g. That's the man — **his** car was stolen.

↓
 That's the man **whose** car was stolen.

That's the bag — **its** strap is broken.

↓
 That's the bag **whose** strap is broken.

people	who/that
things/animals	which/that
possession	whose

- 1** Look at the pictures and the prompts below and ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: *Who was Dickens?*

SB: *He was the man who/that wrote Oliver Twist.*

1 Dickens / write Oliver Twist	2 Volta / invent the electric battery	3 Columbus / discover America
4 Von Zeppelin / build the first airship	5 the Kelloggs / make the first cornflakes	6 Cleopatra / rule Egypt

- 2** Look at the pictures and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *A dishwasher is a machine which/that you use to wash dishes. A flamingo is a bird which/that lives in a warm climate.*

1 dishwasher / wash dishes	2 flamingo / live in a warm climate	3 lawnmower / cut grass
4 typewriter / type letters	5 lion / live in the jungle	6 photocopier / make photocopies

3 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 The girl	a which you bought from the pet shop?
2 Is this the puppy	b whose wife had an accident lives next door.
3 The doctors	c whose husband is a banker?
4 The man	d who lives next door is called Helen.
5 The country	e which I like most is Austria.
6 The bicycle	f who work in this hospital are very good.
7 Is this the woman	g which I was riding belongs to my brother.

Relative Pronouns as Subject or Object

◆ We do not omit the relative pronoun when it is the subject of the relative clause, that is, when there is not a noun or subject pronoun between the relative pronoun and the verb.

e.g. I met a girl. She is from Japan.

I met a girl **who/that** is from Japan. (The relative pronoun is the subject, there is not another pronoun or noun between **who** and the verb **is**.)

◆ We can omit the relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause, that is, when there is a noun or a subject pronoun between the relative pronoun and the verb.

e.g. That's the hat. I bought it last week.

That's the hat (**which/that**) I bought last week. (The relative pronoun is the object, there is the subject pronoun **I** between **which/that** and the verb **bought**.)

4 Fill in the correct relative pronoun. Then, write S for subject or O for object. Finally, state if the relatives can be omitted or not, in the boxes provided.

- The cup ... *which/that* ... I bought is broken.
- How old is the boy hit you?
- Have you used the gloves I bought you yet?
- Laura is talking to the man repaired her car.
- Did you return the books you borrowed from the library?
- They live in a big house is in the countryside.
- I'm writing a letter to my aunt lives in Australia.
- Is he the man lives on the farm?
- Is that the film we saw last week?
- Is that the man stole your bag?
- Where did you buy the dress you were wearing yesterday?
- Have you replied to all the letters you received?

1	O	omitted
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		

who's = **who is** or **who has**

e.g. "Who's (Who is) there?" "It's Julie."

Who's (Who has) got the dictionary?

whose = **possessive**

e.g. Jenny is the girl whose mother is a lawyer.

5 Fill in **who's** or **whose**.

- That's the boy ... *who's* ... going to sell me his bike.
- Her brother, name is Jack, is a fireman.
- She's the girl run four marathons this year.
- That's the man house was on fire yesterday.
- Sheila is the girl mother works in the flower shop.
- She is the woman having a party tomorrow.
- He's the man just been promoted at work.
- Mike is the man wife is in hospital.
- I am the person sister got married last week.
- Rob is the one eaten all the biscuits.

- ◆ We usually avoid using prepositions before relative pronouns.

- The reception **to which** we went was held at a hotel. (formal English - unusual structure)
- The café **which/that** we usually go **to** is near our house. (usual structure)
- The café we usually go **to** is near our house. (everyday English)

- ◆ In relative clauses we do not use object pronouns after prepositions.

Study the example:

We spent our holidays with some friends. They are from Belgium. The friends we spent our holidays with are from Belgium. (NOT: The friends we spent our holidays with ~~them~~ are from Belgium.)

6

Rewrite the pairs of sentences, as in the example.

- Larry went to the cinema with a girl. The girl is his sister.
 - The girl *who/that Larry went to the cinema with is his sister.*
 - The girl *Larry went to the cinema with is his sister.*
- Max talked to a man. The man was from Canada.
 - The man
 - The man
- Debbie is looking at a photo album. The photo album is mine.
 - The photo album
 - The photo album
- Anna is looking for her ring. The ring belonged to her grandmother.
 - The ring
 - The ring
- Bob has gone to a bank. The bank is near the Town Hall.
 - The bank
 - The bank
- Sharon had dinner with a man. He was her lawyer.
 - The man
 - The man
- They invited me to a party. It wasn't very exciting.
 - The party
 - The party
- I was talking to a boy. He lives next door.
 - The boy
 - The boy

Relative Adverbs (where/when/why)

- ◆ **When** is used to refer to time.



1996 was the year **when** they went on a cruise.

- ◆ **Where** is used to refer to place.



A tennis court is a place **where** we play tennis.

- ◆ **Why** is used to give reason.



He had a fight with his best friend, **that's why** he is sad.

7

Fill in the gaps with **who, why, where, when, which** or **whose**.

Dear Aunt Joan,

How are you? My new address, 1) *...which...* I was supposed to give you a long time ago, is at the top of this page. Sorry!

The village 2) I live now is very quiet and peaceful. In fact, that is the reason 3) I decided to rent a house here. The people 4) live next door to me are very friendly. The day 5) I moved in, they invited me for tea. The woman 6) house I've rented lives in the same street as you. Her name is Mrs Fitzgerald. Do you know her? I must go now, the telephone is ringing.

Write to me soon.

Love,
Rachel

8 Fill in the gaps with *who*, *which*, *whose*, *why* or *where*.

- A: Hi Helen! Where are you going?
 B: I'm going round to Jane's house, the woman
 1) *...whose...* children I often look after. She has to
 go to the dentist this morning, that's 2)
 she's asked me to go to her house.
 A: Is she the woman 3)
 works in the post office?
 B: Yes.
 A: Where does she live?
 B: She lives in the big house 4)
 is next to the field.
 A: Which field?
 B: The one 5) Mr McGregor
 keeps his sheep.

9 Fill in the gaps with *where*, *when*, *why*, *who* or *which*.



Martin Foster, (1) *...who...* is 50, is a gardener. 1964 was the year (2) he got his first job. He looked after the gardens of a huge house (3) a very rich family lived. He loves his job and that's the reason (4) he doesn't mind getting up very early in the morning to water the plants and flowers. His favourite time of year is spring (5) all the flowers begin to open and leaves grow on the trees. The part of the garden he likes most is the kitchen garden (6) the vegetables grow, because it has flowers blooming all year round. Martin says flowers and plants make our world beautiful. "That's (7) you must protect the environment around you – it's something (8) can't be replaced."

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- This is Sara. She teaches us ballet.
who This is **Sara who teaches us** ballet.
- That's Simon. His father is a lawyer.
whose That's Simon **whose father is** a lawyer.
- That's the hotel. I spent my holidays there.
where That's the **hotel where I spent** my holidays.
- This is the story. It won first prize in the competition.
which This is the **story which won first** prize in the competition.
that This is **the story that won first** prize in the competition.

10 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- That's the jumper. I knitted it myself.
which That's the *...jumper which I knitted...* myself.
- He's the man. His dog often chases my cat.
whose He's the chases my cat.
- That's the church. We got married there.
where That's the married.
- That's the shop. I bought my new dress there.
where That's the my new dress.
- Philip is the man. He lives in a castle.
who Philip is the a castle.
- These are the people. Their daughter is a rock singer.
whose These are is a rock singer.
- That is the dog. His owner is a famous actor.
whose That is the is a famous actor.
- Jess is the girl. She speaks eight languages.
who Jess is the eight languages.
- This is the magazine. I bought it yesterday.
that This is the yesterday.
- Sam is the boy. He ran away from home.
who Sam is the from home.
- That's the hospital. I was born there.
where That's the born.
- That's the ring. Sophie found it yesterday.
that That's the ring yesterday.

Identifying/Non-identifying Clauses

There are two types of relative clauses: identifying relative clauses and non-identifying relative clauses.

- ◆ An **identifying relative clause** gives necessary information and is essential to the meaning of the main sentence. The clause is not put in commas. **Who, which** and **that** can be omitted when they are the object of the relative clause.

e.g. *People risk their lives. (Which people? We don't know. The meaning of the sentence is not clear.)*
*People **who/that drive dangerously** risk their lives. (Which people? Those who drive dangerously.)*
The book was exciting. (Which book? We do not know. The meaning of the sentence is not clear.)
*The book **which/that/ – you lent me** was exciting. (Which book? The one you lent me.)*

- ◆ A **non-identifying relative clause** gives extra information and is not essential to the meaning of the main sentence. In non-identifying relative clauses the relative pronouns cannot be omitted. **That** cannot replace **who** or **which**. The clause is put in commas.

e.g. *Mr Stevenson is my neighbour. (The meaning of the sentence is clear.)*
*Mr Stevenson, **who used to work in a bank**, is my neighbour. (The relative clause gives extra information.)*
My car is a Fiat Uno. (The meaning of the sentence is clear.)
*My car, **which I bought five years ago**, is a Fiat Uno. (The relative clause gives extra information.)*

11

Fill in the relative pronoun. Put commas where necessary. Write I for identifying, NI for non-identifying and if the relative can be omitted or not.

- Mr Cross, *who* lives next door, broke his leg last week.
- That's the woman drives the school bus.
- My sister is called Sarah is younger than I am.
- The cake was covered in chocolate was delicious.
- I know a boy mother is a builder.
- This is the pen he gave me for my birthday.
- Stuart is older than me loves riding his bicycle.
- This book is very old belongs to my father.
- Have you seen the cat has only got three legs?
- Fred is thirty years old got married last week.
- The girl is sitting on the floor is called Emily.
- That car is very expensive belongs to my Uncle George.

1	NI	not omitted
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		

12

Choose the correct answer.

- An airship is an aircraft ...*B*... looks like a big balloon.
 A who B which C why
- The Titanic hit an iceberg. That's it sank.
 A where B why C which
- Guy Fawkes was a man tried to blow up the English Houses of Parliament in 1605.
 A who B which C whose
- The rabbit is an animal only eats plants and vegetables.
 A who B whose C that
- Athens is the city the first modern Olympic Games took place.
 A that B which C where
- Edison was the man invented the light bulb.
 A when B which C who
- 1966 was the year England won the football World Cup.
 A when B which C who
- 1492 was the year Columbus discovered America.
 A which B where C when
- Whales are mammals can stay under water for 20 minutes without having to come up for air.
 A who B that C whose

13 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 He's the man which writes songs for a lot of famous singers.
- 2 Where's the book I bought it last week?
- 3 That's the woman who's house is made of glass.
- 4 My sister, who she is 10 years old, is called Betty.
- 5 The reason when I was late was that I overslept.
- 6 The man I was talking to him is my uncle.
- 7 That's the hotel which I spent my holidays last year.
- 8 London, that is a big city, is the capital of England.

Revision Box

14 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

HIJACKERS ESCAPE

Yesterday, a plane which (1) *...was flying ...* (fly) from London to New York was hijacked.

The two hijackers (2) (order) the pilot to fly the plane to Canada. At the time of the hijack most of the passengers (3) (watch) the in-flight film while others (4) (sleep). The flight attendants (5) (get) ready to serve dinner when the two hijackers (6) (appear). They (7) (carry) guns and they (8) (threaten) the passengers. When the plane finally (9) (land) at the airport, the hijackers (10) (manage) to escape. Luckily, nobody was hurt.

15 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 How long *...B...* each other?
A do they know B have they known
C did they know
- 2 She with her parents at the moment.
A is staying B stays C stayed
- 3 John in the town centre and walks to work.
A has lived B lived C lives
- 4 When they young, they travelled a lot.
A was B were C have been
- 5 I that song before.
A have never heard B never hear
C have always heard

ORAL
Activity

Erica spent a weekend at a chalet in the Swiss Alps. Who did she meet there? Look at the notes and make sentences using *who* or *whose* as in the example.



- 1 Ron is a ski-instructor.
Erica met Ron who is a ski-instructor.
- 2 Claire's husband owns the chalet.
.....
- 3 Jack's son is only three but he can already ski.
.....
- 4 Jessie works for a sports magazine.
.....
- 5 Helen is a famous writer from New York.
.....

WRITING
Activity

Erica is writing a letter to her friend Monica. Fill in the gaps with the correct relative clause and then continue the letter using the notes from the Oral Activity.

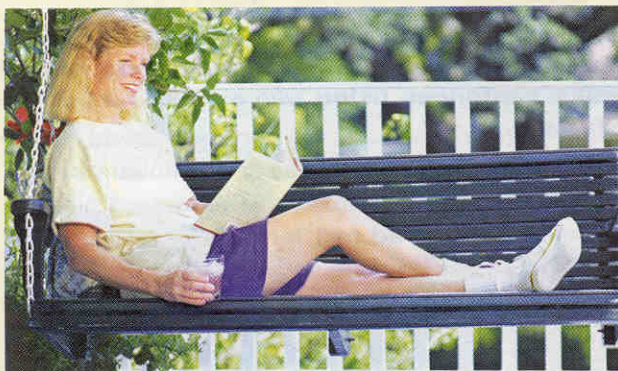
Dear Monica,

I'm writing to tell you my latest news. I've just been to the Alps! The reason (1) I decided to spend a weekend in the Swiss Alps was that I wanted to improve my skiing. The day (2) I arrived at the village it was snowing heavily, but it looked beautiful. The chalet (3) I stayed was small and cosy.

I met some interesting people there. I met Ron who

UNIT 7

Present Perfect Continuous



How long has Karen been reading the book?
She **has been reading** the book for three hours.



She is tired. **Has she been playing?**
No, she **hasn't**.
She **has been studying** for two hours.

We form the present perfect continuous with the auxiliary verb **have/has**, the past participle of the verb to be (**been**) and the main verb with the **-ing** suffix.
e.g. He **has been reading** his newspaper for an hour.

We form questions by putting **have/has** before the subject.
e.g. **Have you been living** here long?

We form negations by putting **not** between **have/has** and **been**.
e.g. They **have not/haven't been waiting** for a long time.
She **has not/hasn't been working** here long.

Affirmative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	have	've	} been studying.
He/She/It	has	's	
You/We/They	have	've	
Interrogative			
Have	I	} been studying?	
Has	he/she/it		
Have	you/we/they		
Negative			
	Long form	Short form	
I	have not	haven't	} been studying.
He/She/It	has not	hasn't	
You/We/They	have not	haven't	

1 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

SA: *How long has Sam been working for this company?*
SB: *He has been working for this company for two years.*

- Sam / work / for this company / two years
- Mary / teach / French / 1990
- the robbers / hide / in a farmhouse / a week
- Peter / make / model planes / 1992
- Julie / play / the guitar / four years
- the children / watch / TV / two hours

2 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present perfect continuous.

- What ...*have you been doing*... all week? (you/ do)
- his car all day? (Jim/repair)
- I this book for weeks. (read)
- a lot this year? (Ben/swim)
- Mr Bell is busy. He on the phone for an hour. (talk)
- I've got a penfriend. I to her for five years. (write)
- John won't pass his exams. He any homework lately. (not/do)
- Molly with me since last month. (stay)
- We on this project since December. (work)
- Sam how to ride a horse for three months. (learn)

Present Perfect Continuous

Use

We use the present perfect continuous for:

- ◆ an action which started in the past and continues up to the present.



He **has been painting** the house for three days. (He began painting the house three days ago and he is still painting it.)

- ◆ an action which has recently finished and its result is evident now.



They're tired. They **have been painting** the garage door all morning. (They have just finished painting and the result is evident now. The paint on the door is still wet and the two people look tired.)

Note: 1) We use the present perfect simple instead of the present perfect continuous with **non-continuous verbs** (know, believe, like, etc.).

e.g. I've **known** Sharon since we were at school together. (NOT: ~~I've been knowing Sharon since we were at school together.~~)

2) With the verbs **live, feel** and **work** we can use the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple with no difference in meaning. e.g. He **has been living/has lived** here since 1994.

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the present perfect continuous include:

for, since, all morning/afternoon/week/day, etc., how long (in questions)

3

Match Column A with Column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 How long have you been waiting?	a He's been planting trees all day.
2 Bill is in the garden.	b That's why she's lost weight.
3 You've been studying all morning.	c It's been snowing all day.
4 Anne's been exercising a lot recently.	d She's been working hard all week.
5 It's cold outside.	e I think it's time to stop now.
6 Jenny's tired.	f For ten minutes.
7 We've been practising all afternoon.	g Lots of things. I've been busy.
8 What have you been doing since I last saw you?	h Why don't you take a break?

4

What have these people been doing? Make sentences using an appropriate verb in the present perfect continuous.

- Catherine went to the supermarket an hour ago. She's still there.
Catherine has been shopping for an hour.
- My mum began cooking three hours ago. She hasn't finished yet.
- The teams started playing football twenty minutes ago. They haven't finished yet.
- The headmaster started speaking two hours ago. He hasn't stopped yet.
- Bill began building his house six months ago. He hasn't finished it yet.
- I started doing my homework three hours ago. I haven't finished it yet.

5

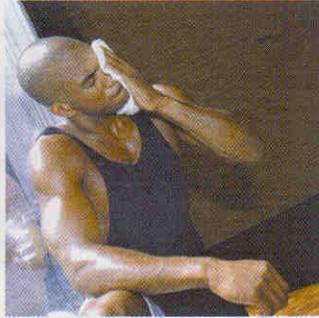
In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

- SA: *What's your favourite hobby?*
 SB: *Painting.*
 SA: *How long have you been painting?*
 SB: *I've been painting since I was fourteen years old.*

- favourite hobby
- best friend / know
- favourite TV programme / watch
- your address / live
- favourite magazine / read

6 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the present perfect continuous.

work, snow, exercise, play



- 1 Everything is white outside. It *...has/s been snowing...* all night.
- 2 He is hot. He for two hours.



- 3 They are tired. They volleyball all afternoon.
- 4 He has got a headache. He hard all morning.

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous.

A: Hi Liz. You look exhausted. 1) *...Have you been working...* (you/work) overtime again?
 B: Yes, I have. I 2) (help) my boss to update the files in the office all week. He 3) (read) the files and I 4) (write) down names, addresses, phone numbers and so on. What about you?
 A: Well, I 5) (train) hard for the championship next week.
 B: I see! 6) (you/lift) weights all day long?
 A: Yes, for two weeks. How's Sue? 7) (she/study) for her exams?
 B: No, she hasn't. She 8) (go) out every evening. I won't be surprised if she fails again!



Short Answers

e.g. Have you been working hard? Yes, I have.

Have you ...?	Yes, I/we have.	No, I/we haven't.
Has he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it has.	No, he/she/it hasn't.
Have they ...?	Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.

8 Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: *Have people been taking photos since 1751?*
 SB: *No, they haven't. They've been taking photos since 1851.*

1851  1 take photos/1751	1894  2 listen to the radio/1824
1791  3 ride bicycles/1771	1903  4 travel by plane/1903
1450  5 print books/1450	1856  6 use fridges/1836
1878  7 use light bulbs/1868	1809  8 store food in tins/1709

Present Perfect Continuous versus Present Perfect Simple

Present Perfect Continuous

We use the present perfect continuous:

- for an action which started in the past and continues up to the present.



Mr Davis **has been teaching** for six years. (He began working as a teacher six years ago and he still is.)

- to put emphasis on the duration of an action.



She **has been painting** this picture for two hours. (She started two hours ago and she is still painting it.)

Present Perfect Simple

We use the present perfect simple:

- for an action which has just finished.



They **have just made** a deal.

- to put emphasis on number.



He **has painted** twenty pictures.

9 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple.

- A: Amanda ...**has opened**... (open) a shop which sells newspapers and magazines.
B: Really? Where is it?
- A: Where's Dan?
B: He (just/go) to the post office. He'll be back soon.
- A: Dave (learn) to drive for six months.
B: I know. He hasn't passed his test yet, though.
- A: I (know) Alison for ten years.
B: Well, I only met her last week.
- A: My uncle is painting his house again.
B: Again? He (paint) it three times this year already.
- A: Is Paul sleeping?
B: Yes, he (sleep) since 10 o'clock last night.

10 Mary is reading some letters. Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple.

A ... I'm planning to buy a new house. I 1) ...**'ve been looking**... (look) for one for two months now. So far I 2) (look) at ten houses, but I 3) (not/find) one I like.

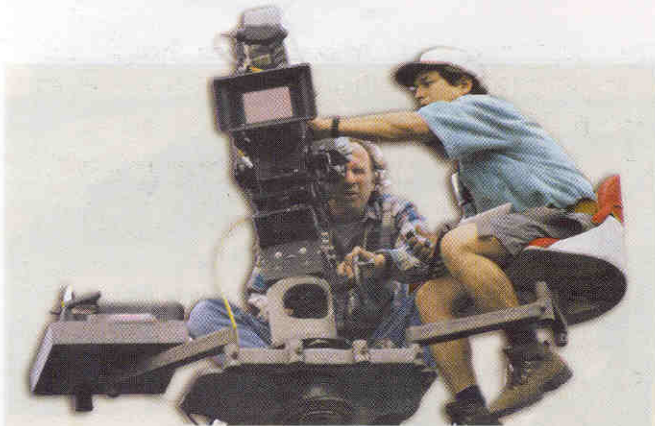
B ... My Spanish lessons are going very well. I 1) (learn) Spanish for five months now and I love it. I 2) (already/learn) a lot.

C ... John 1) (be) very busy recently. He 2) (paint) the living-room and the bedrooms, but he 3) (not/ start) painting the kitchen yet.

Present Perfect Continuous

11

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple.



- A: Good evening and welcome to our show. Tonight we have Steve Connolly, the well-known director. We're glad to have you here Steve. What 1) *...have you been doing...* (do) lately?
- B: Well, I 2) (finish) my latest film, "Double Crossing".
- A: That 3) (just/come out) at the cinemas, hasn't it?
- B: Yes. The papers 4) (give) it good reviews. I hope they'll like my next film too.
- A: 5) (you/decide) what it'll be about?
- B: Yes, I 6) (read) an exciting book over the last few weeks and I want to make it into a film. I 7) (not/decide) where to film it yet, perhaps Moscow.
- A: Aha! Is it true that you 8) (recently/start) learning Russian?
- B: Yes, I 9) (study) it for three years now and I 10) (visit) the country twice.
- A: Steve, thank you very much for being with us, and good luck with your new film.

12

Fill in the blanks with time expressions from the list below.

since, all morning, already, how long, for, ever, yet, so far, just, always

- The baby has been crying *...all morning...*
- Simon hasn't started school
- She has washed the clothes, so they are still wet.
- Martha has wanted to go to Mexico.

- She has been ill a week.
- has he been at home?
- It's very early, but Richard has gone to work.
- I've sent ten party invitations
- I haven't spoken French 1990.
- Have you appeared on television?

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- Helen started learning French four months ago.
has Helen *has been learning French* for four months.
- They haven't paid the bills yet.
still They *still haven't paid* the bills.
- When did you buy your car?
since How long is it *since you bought* your car?

13

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- When did Paul sell his house?
since How long is it *...since Paul sold his...* house?
- Mark started playing the guitar three years ago.
has Mark playing the guitar for three years.
- The children haven't finished their homework yet.
still The children their homework.
- When did you last decorate your living-room?
since How long is it your living-room?
- We haven't called the plumber yet.
still We the plumber.

14

Correct the mistakes.

- I have looked for him all day. I can't find him.
- He has trying to fix the car all morning.
- I have buying lots of food this week.
- I not have brought any shampoo.
- It has been snowed, but it's stopped now.
- How long they have been cleaning the house?
- I've been knowing Lillian for two years.
- Have you cried? Your eyes are red.

Revision Box

15 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous, the present continuous or the present simple.

SUNDAY
JUNE 13

Sunday 13/6/98

Dear Diary,

It's Sunday again. I 1) ...am... (be) so bored. I 2) (not/know) what to do. Mum is in the kitchen. She 3) (cook). She 4) (cook) since eight o'clock this morning. Dad's in the garden. He 5) (mow) the lawn for two hours. He 6) (always/work) in the garden on Sunday mornings. Jimmy is in his room. He 7) (do) his homework. He 8) (study) for his history test for an hour. He 9) (never/play) with me. Grandpa 10) (read) his newspaper and Grandma 11) (knit). She 12) (knit) a jumper for me for two weeks. The jumper is yellow and I 13) (hate) yellow. I 14) (sit) alone in my bedroom all morning. You're my only companion...







16 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A Today 1) ...is... (be) my father's birthday. We 2) (have) a party tonight, but he 3) (not/know) anything about it. I 4) (phone) all of his friends yesterday and 5) (ask) them to come to our house at 7 o'clock. It 6) (be) a big surprise!
- B Samuel is a writer. He 1) (write) children's books. At the moment he 2) (write) a story about animals. He 3) (write) another book when this one is finished.
- C My dog is called Ralph. I 1) (have) him since he 2) (be) a puppy. Ralph 3) (escape) from our garden once when he was young, but luckily we 4) (find) him. He 5) (be) very frightened. I think that's why he 6) (not/do) it again.

ORAL Activity

The people below like doing different things. Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: How long have you been playing football?
SB: I've been playing football for two years.
SA: How many matches have you played so far?
SB: I've played 60 matches.

Name	How long	How many
 1 Oliver Jones	play football two years	play 60 matches
 2 Jessica Hill	paint pictures 1993	paint 10 pictures
 3 Amanda Price	take photos nine months	take 300 photos
 4 Darren Mason	climb mountains 1992	climb 4 mountains
 5 Jim Brown	make pots six months	make 40 pots
 6 Fiona Carson	write books 1985	write 4 books

WRITING Activity

Look at your notes from the Oral Activity above and write about the people and their hobbies. Begin like this:

Oliver Jones' hobby is playing football. He has been playing football for two years. He has played sixty matches so far. Jessica Hill's hobby is

UNIT 8

Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

Reflexive Pronouns



She has hurt herself.



They made their costumes themselves.

Subject Pronouns

I
you
he
she
it
we
you
they

Reflexive Pronouns

myself
yourself
himself
herself
itself
ourselves
yourselves
themselves

We use **reflexive pronouns**:

- with verbs such as **behave, burn, cut, enjoy, hurt, introduce, kill, look at, teach**, etc. when the subject and the object of the verb are the same person.

Subject Object
e.g. **Andrew** has hurt **himself**.

- with the preposition **by** when we mean "alone, without company" or "without help".

e.g. **Tim** painted the kitchen **by himself**. (Nobody helped Tim paint the kitchen.)
I like being **by myself** sometimes. (alone, without company — on my own)

- with the following expressions: **enjoy yourself** (have a good time), **behave yourself** (be good), **help yourself** (you're welcome to take something if you want).

- to emphasise the noun or the pronoun of a sentence. They usually come after the noun or pronoun they emphasise or at the end of the sentence.

e.g. **I myself** made this cake. (I made the cake, not somebody else.)

Peter met the **Queen herself**. (He met the Queen, not somebody else.)

Note: We do not normally use reflexive pronouns with verbs such as **dress, wash and shave**. However, we can use a reflexive pronoun with these verbs when we want to show that someone did something with a lot of effort.

e.g. Sarah got up and **dressed** in a hurry.

Although Mrs Wood was ill, she managed to **dress herself**.

Lucy is only two years old, but she can **wash herself**.

1

Fill in the gaps with the correct reflexive pronoun.



- He has hurt ...**himself**...
- They are enjoying
- She made the cake
- He may burn
- You must behave
- He went fishing by
- She can't dress

Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

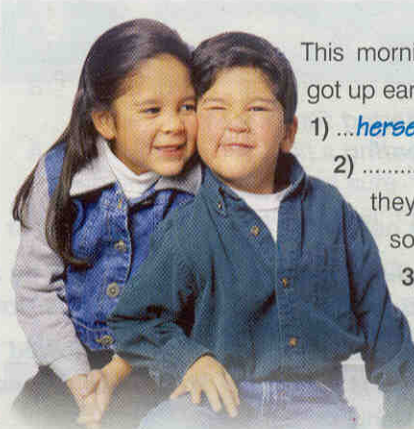
2 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

COLUMN A	COLUMN B
1 Leo burnt	a myself at parties.
2 Babies can't	b by herself.
3 I always enjoy	c herself to knit.
4 Did you do your homework	d by himself?
5 Sandra taught	e himself on the oven.
6 My mother painted the house	f the manager himself.
7 Did William draw that picture	g by yourself?
8 We spoke to	h didn't hurt himself.
9 Billy fell off his bike but he	i by myself.
10 I don't need help. I can do it	j wash themselves.

4 Fill in myself, yourself, herself, ourselves or themselves.

- A: I like your dress, Kate. Did you make it 1) *yourself*...?
 B: Well, I did most of it by 2) , but my mother helped with some of it.
 A: My sister makes all of her clothes 3) and she makes other things, too.
 B: Things would be so much cheaper if we made everything 4) My parents used to make a lot of things 5) but they don't have the time any more.

5 Fill in the appropriate reflexive pronouns.



This morning, John and Helen got up early. Helen dressed 1) *herself*... and John washed 2) Then, they decided to make some breakfast by 3) While they were in the kitchen, John hurt 4) when he tried to cut some bread with a sharp knife, and Helen burnt 5) while she was making some hot tea. After that, they decided never to make breakfast by 6) again!

-selves/each other



Julie and Karen are looking at **themselves** in the mirror. (Julie is looking at herself in the mirror and Karen is looking at herself in the mirror, too.)



They are looking at **each other**. (The woman is looking at the girl and the girl is looking at the woman.)

3 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate reflexive pronoun or each other.

- I look at *myself*... in the mirror every morning.
- Tim's line is busy and Brian's line is busy too. I think they're talking to
- Fred and Jenny help with their homework.
- The boys are having fun. They are enjoying
- "Help to more coffee and biscuits."

6 Fill in the appropriate reflexive pronouns.

- Help *yourself*... to tea and cake!
- I made a sandwich for lunch.
- Tommy bought a present.
- Joe doesn't need help; he can fix his bicycle by
- Sandra painted her bedroom
- They taught to drive.
- "Shall I help you?" "No, I can do it by"
- "We are going to a party." "Enjoy!"
- We built our house
- Terry and Annie put up the tent
- Grace is singing to in the bath.
- Jack, I want you to behave at school today.

Both/Neither - All/None



Both girls are wearing sunglasses.
Neither girl is wearing a hat.



All of them are young men.
None of them is a woman/are women.

◆ We use **both** or **neither** to refer to two people or things.

Both has a positive meaning and is followed by a plural verb.

e.g. **Both girls/Both the girls/Both of the girls/Both of them are** very good students.

Neither has a negative meaning and is followed by either a singular or plural verb in the affirmative.

e.g. **Neither book is** interesting. (NOT: ~~Neither book isn't interesting.~~) **Neither of the books/Neither of them is/are** interesting.

BOTH +	(the +) plural noun	of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun	of us/them, etc. + are
NEITHER +	singular noun + is	of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun	of us/them, etc. + is/are

◆ We use **all** or **none** to refer to more than two people or things.

All has a positive meaning and is followed by a plural verb.

e.g. **All the students/All of the students/All of them have studied** for the test.

None has a negative meaning and is followed by either a singular or plural verb in the affirmative.

e.g. **None of these cars is/are** cheap. (NOT: ~~None of these cars isn't/aren't cheap.~~)

ALL +	(the +) plural noun	of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun	of us/them, etc. + are
NONE +		of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun	of us/them, etc. + is/are

Both/All can go:

- after the verb to be. e.g. *They were both tired. They are all here.*
- after the auxiliary verb but before the main verb. e.g. *They have both finished dinner. They will all come to the party.*
- at the beginning of the sentence. e.g. *Both women are tall. All of the students passed the test.*

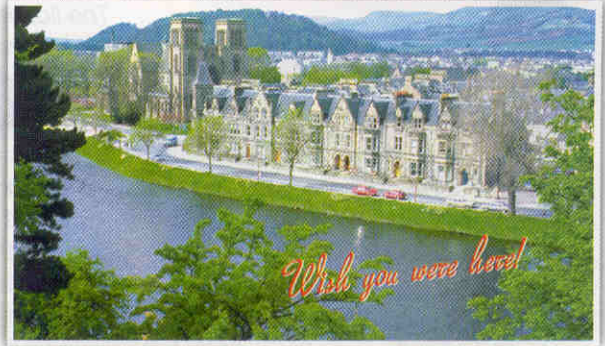
Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

7 Look at the pictures and describe them using **all** or **both** in as many ways as possible, as in the example.

e.g. *These are all strawberries. All of them are strawberries. They are all strawberries.*



9 Fill in the gaps with **both**, **all**, **neither** or **none**.



- A: Have you seen Beth and Angela recently?
 B: No. I haven't seen them since last week.
 A: 1) *...Neither...* of them has phoned me since Wednesday.
 B: I tried to phone them yesterday, but no one was at home.
 A: I think they have 2) gone away on holiday, but I'm not sure.
 B: Did you phone any of their friends?
 A: Yes, I phoned 3) of them, but 4) of them knows where Beth and Angela are.
 B: Here's the postman. Look! There's a postcard here. It's from Beth and Angela. They are 5) in Scotland. 6) of them is having a good time, though, because it's raining there.
 A: When are they coming back?
 B: They are coming back next Sunday.

8 Fill in the gaps using **both/neither** of **us/them**.

- George and Peter went to the cinema to see a film. *...Neither of them...* enjoyed it, though, because it was quite boring.
- My sister and I are twins. have the same colour hair.
- I tried to open the cupboard, then James tried to open it, but could do it because it was stuck.
- I made a chocolate cake and a cherry cake, but tasted good because I forgot to add the sugar!
- Samantha and Kate were bridesmaids at a wedding last week. looked lovely in their beautiful dresses.
- I phoned Bill and Tom yesterday. I think were out because no one answered the telephone.

10 Fill in the gaps with **both**, **all**, **neither** or **none**.

- A: Would you like an apple or an orange?
 B: *Neither.* I'd like a pear, please.
- A: I looked for Helen and Jane, but of them were there.
 B: They have gone shopping.
- A: I've got lots of skirts but of them fit me.
 B: Well, buy some new ones.
- A: I'm waiting for three friends. of them are late!
 B: I'm sure they will be here soon.
- A: My sisters, Ann and Julie, are teachers.
 B: Really? I'm a teacher, too.
- A: There were lots of birds in the garden this morning.
 B: Really? They have gone now.
- A: Steve and Dave had an accident yesterday.
 B: Are they in hospital?
 A: No. Luckily, of them were hurt.

Both...and / Neither...nor



The lion is a wild animal.
The tiger is a wild animal, too.

Both the lion **and** the tiger **are** wild animals.
The lion **doesn't** eat grass.
The tiger **doesn't** eat grass, **either**.
Neither the lion **nor** the tiger **eats** grass.

- ◆ We use **both ... and** to join the subjects of two different sentences in one sentence which has a positive meaning. The verb of the sentence is always in the plural.

e.g. **Both** Bob **and** Paul **are** from Scotland.

- ◆ We use **neither ... nor** to join the subjects of two different sentences in one sentence which has a negative meaning. The verb of the sentence is always in the affirmative and agrees in number with the second subject.

e.g. **Neither** Sheila **nor** Mary **wants** to travel abroad.
(NOT: ~~Neither Sheila nor Mary don't want to travel abroad.~~)

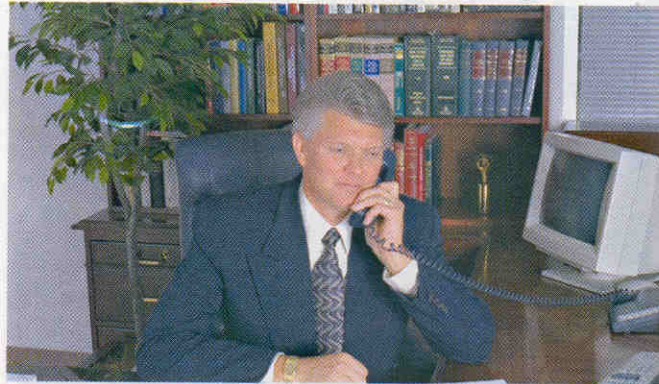
11 Rewrite the sentences using **both...and** or **neither...nor**.

- Barry works at the bank. Mark works at the bank, too.
Both Barry and Mark work at the bank.
- Jenny is from Ireland. Mark is from Ireland, too.
.....
- I don't like bananas and Marie doesn't like bananas, either.
.....
- Jane doesn't go to school any more and her sister doesn't, either.
.....
- My mother enjoys skiing. I enjoy skiing, too.
.....
- Lucy didn't spend her holidays at home. Bob didn't, either.
.....
- Susan went on holiday to Spain last year. Emily went there, too.
.....
- Fred hasn't got long hair and Stuart hasn't got long hair, either.
.....

12

Look at the pictures and the prompts given and compare the two jobs (businessman/pilot) using **both...and** or **neither...nor**.

e.g. *Both businessmen and pilots work hard.*



- work hard
- spend much time with their families
- earn a lot of money
- have much free time
- meet a lot of people
- make important decisions
- have stressful jobs

13

Complete the article below using your notes from ex. 12.

Your choice: PILOT or BUSINESSMAN?

This week, we are looking at two different jobs which have very similar advantages and disadvantages: that of a pilot and a businessman.

Both businessmen and pilots work very hard.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

Possessives



Helen is **Peter and Jane's** mother. She is **their** mother. **Jane's** bicycle is red. The bicycle is **hers**.



Bob and Ted have got briefcases. These are **Bob's and Ted's** briefcases.

We use a) the possessive case, b) possessive adjectives and c) possessive pronouns to show possession or relationship.

◆ The possessive case is formed as follows:

A: for people or animals:

- with **'s** for singular nouns Ken's car
- with **'** for plural nouns ending in **-s**.
the girls' dresses, the birds' nests
- with **'s** for irregular plural nouns.
the women's clothes
- when the same thing belongs to two or more people, we add **'s** only to the last noun.
e.g. **Gina and Tom's** car. (The car belongs to both of them.)
- when two or more things belong to two or more people and we want to show that each person has his/her own thing, we add **'s** to each noun.
e.g. **Claire's and Kate's** uniforms. (Each girl has her own uniform.)

B: we use **of** to talk about things or parts of things.

e.g. the roof **of** the house
(NOT: ~~the house's roof~~ because 'house' is a thing)

◆ When we refer to place or time, the possessive case is formed as follows:

- **phrase of place (shop/business, etc.) + 's**
at the **butcher's** (we mean the shop)
- **phrase showing measurement of time + 's/'**
(to show how long things last)
a **day's** walk/two **hours'** drive

Possessive Adjectives		Possessive Pronouns	
my	our	mine	ours
your	your	yours	yours
his	their	his	theirs
her		hers	
its		—	

We put possessive adjectives before nouns.
Possessive pronouns are never followed by nouns.
e.g. This is **her** car. It's black. The black car is **hers**.

14 Join the two parts with the correct form of the possessive case.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 the bags — the women | 6 the manager — the hotel |
| 2 the top — the hill | 7 the man — the trousers |
| 3 the car — the roof | 8 the toys — the children |
| 4 the shop — the owner | 9 the name — the street |
| 5 the boys — the caps | 10 the clothes — the baby |

15 Rewrite the part of each sentence which is in bold using the possessive case, as in the example.

- I'll meet you **in an hour**. = in an *hour's* time
- From the airport, the hotel is **a drive of four hours**.
= four drive
- The advert is **in the paper today**.
= in paper
- I heard it **on the news yesterday**.
= on news
- It's **on the menu this week**.
= this menu
- The results this year** are better.
= this results
- I will make the phone call **in five minutes**.
= in time
- That is **the magazine from last month**.
= last magazine

its = possessive adjective
e.g. The dog is carrying **its** bowl.
it's = **it is** or **it has** e.g. **It's (it is)** raining hard today.
Let's go outside. **It's (it has)** stopped raining.

16 Fill in the gaps with **it's** or **its**.

- The dog buried ...**its**... bone in the garden.
- The book isn't mine, my brother's.
- I can't wear this jumper because got a hole in it.
- The bird built nest in the tree in our garden.
- very cold today. I think it might snow.
- It was raining earlier but stopped now.
- quite a good novel but I didn't enjoy the end very much.
- The cat was cleaning paws.

Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

17 Look at the objects and say what belongs to each person using the possessive case.

1 ...**Bob's**... trumpet 2 pencils

3 and hats 4 toys

5 shirts 6 shoes

Subject Pronouns

I
you
he
she
it
we
you
they

Object Pronouns

me
you
him
her
it
us
you
them

Subject pronouns go before verbs as subjects. Object pronouns go after verbs or prepositions as objects. e.g. **He** is walking barefoot. Look at **him!**

18 Fill in the appropriate possessive adjective or pronoun (i.e. subject, object, reflexive or possessive).

- 1 A: Do you go to the village school?
B: No, .../... don't. My sister and go to the school in town. go there by bus

- in the morning and mother brings back in the car every afternoon.
- 2 A: Whose are these football boots? Are they yours?
B: Yes, are
- 3 A: Where are your parents?
B: have gone shopping. have taken brother with
- 4 A: What did you and Jim do last night?
B: went to the cinema.
A: What did see?
B: The new James Bond film.
A: Was good?
B: Yes, was excellent. Both of enjoyed
- 5 A: 'm going to a party tonight but 've got nothing to wear.
B: Don't worry, 'll give one of dresses to wear.
A: Thanks. Can take car too?
B: 'm afraid can't. 's at the garage. Anyway, enjoy at the party!
- 6 A: Have you seen Georgia and Julian recently?
B: No, but I wrote a letter to last week.
A: Have written back to ?
B: Not yet, but I'm sure will.
- 7 A: Where are you going?
B: I'm going shopping with Pauline. Do want to come with ?
A: Yes, please. would love to come.
- 8 A: Edward has hurt is in hospital.
B: Really? Let's go and visit, then.

19 Underline the correct item.

- 1 Oh dear! I've left my/mine wallet at home.
- 2 Ours/Our video recorder is not working. Grandmother is lending us her/hers for a few days.
- 3 Mine/My passport has expired. I need to get a new one.
- 4 The Smiths' house is the third from the left. And the Porsche that is parked outside is their/theirs, too.
- 5 John and Patrick aren't at home but theirs/their cars are in the garage.
- 6 Don't wash your hair with that shampoo. It's mine/my.
- 7 Is that Danielle's coat? No, it isn't. Her/Hers is the one with the red buttons on the front.
- 8 Rita has left her/hers job as a shop assistant because she wants to be a singer.
- 9 Don't use my pen, please. Use yours/your instead.
- 10 Is Sue Parker your/yours cousin? I've known her for months but she has never told me that.

Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

20 Correct the mistakes.

- Neither Nora nor Peter didn't enjoy the party.
- This is ours dog.
- Neither Andy and Jane lives in Scotland.
- This is Freds' watch.
- We enjoyed us on holiday last year.
- Is this him suitcase?
- These are Johns slippers.
- Jim, Bob and Tim are both doctors.

Revision Box

21 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple, past continuous, present perfect simple, present simple or present continuous.

When my grandfather 1) ...*was*... (be) a young boy, he 2) (like) watching the ships in the harbour of the town where he 3) (live). A few years later, he 4) (look) for a job when he 5) (find) one on one of the ships in the harbour and he 6) (become) a sailor. My grandfather 7) (just/retire) and he 8) (enjoy) his free time. Now, he 9) (work) in his garden and he 10) (do) all the things he couldn't do when he 11) (work).

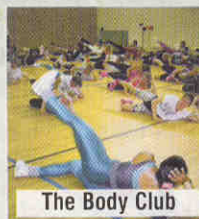
22 Choose the correct answer.

- Jill and Anne ...*C*... tennis now.
A were playing B play C are playing
- we go out for a meal on Saturday night?
A Will B Shall C Are
- Look out! You hit your head on the cupboard door.
A are going to B won't C shall
- We for Rome tomorrow morning.
A are leaving B left C were leaving
- People to the radio a lot sixty years ago.
A were listening B have listened C used to listen
- Elizabeth Wilson is the woman won the competition.
A which B who C whose

ORAL Activity

Look at the table and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have got qualified instructors. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a sauna.*



The Body Club



The Fitness Centre

• qualified instructors	✓	✓
• sauna	✗	✗
• less than £40 a month	✓	✓
• aerobics classes	✓	✓
• a large car park	✗	✗
• near the city centre	✓	✓
• a swimming-pool	✗	✗

WRITING Activity

Look at the table in the Oral Activity again and complete the article about the Body Club and the Fitness Centre.

Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre are excellent sports centres in our neighbourhood. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have got qualified instructors.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 9

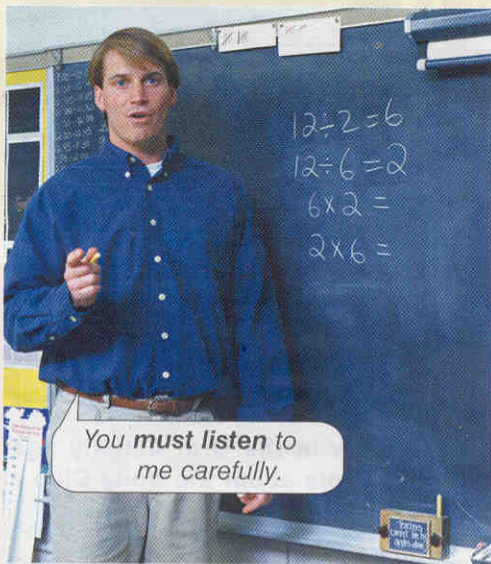
Modal Verbs I

The verbs **must, can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should** and **ought** are **modal auxiliary verbs**. They express certainty, possibility, obligation, necessity, lack of necessity, etc.

The main characteristics of modal verbs are the following:

- ◆ they do not take an -s, -ing or -ed suffix. e.g. He **can** cook. (NOT: ~~He cans cook.~~)
- ◆ they form questions, negations and short answers without the auxiliary verb 'do'.
e.g. **May I** go now? (NOT: ~~Do I may go now?~~)
They shouldn't make any noise. (NOT: ~~They don't should make any noise.~~)
- ◆ they are followed by a bare infinitive except for **ought** which is followed by a to - infinitive.
e.g. You **must fasten** your seat-belt. (NOT: ~~You must to fasten your seat belt.~~)
- ◆ they do not form all tenses. They usually have present or past tense.
e.g. He **can play** water polo. (present tense) He **could ski** when he was young. (past tense)

Must - Have to (obligation - necessity - advice)



- ◆ **Must** and **have to** express obligation and necessity.
e.g. You **must come** home early.
*I **have to be** at the office at nine o'clock.*
- ◆ **Must** can only be used in the present tense. We use **have to** to form all the other tenses.
e.g. I'll **have to work** late tomorrow.
*He **had to leave** early yesterday. (NOT: ~~He must leave early yesterday.~~)*
- ◆ We also use **must** to give advice.
e.g. You **must talk** to your brother about it.
*You **mustn't be** late for school.*

1

Clare has got a cold. She has gone to the doctor's. Look at the prompts and say what the doctor advises her (not) to do.

- stay in bed
You must stay in bed.



- go to the office for three days



- take some medicine



- drink a lot of water



- eat any ice-cream



- take your temperature twice a day



- call me if you have a high temperature



2

Look at the prompts given. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: *Why did he go to the supermarket yesterday?*
SB: *Because he had to do some shopping.*

- 1 he / go to the supermarket / do some shopping
- 2 she / go to the post office / post some letters
- 3 they / call the babysitter / attend a meeting
- 4 he / call a taxi / go to the airport
- 5 she / buy a dictionary / translate a novel
- 6 they / go to a restaurant / entertain some clients

3 Fill in the gaps with *don't/doesn't have to, didn't have to* or *won't have to*.

- 1 Tomorrow is Saturday, so I ...*won't have to*... go to school.
- 2 I've already finished my project, so I do it in the holidays.
- 3 We bought a takeaway pizza last night, so we cook dinner.
- 4 Tom and Mary have got a washing-machine, so they go to the laundrette.
- 5 Steve passed his driving test, so he take it again.
- 6 Sally is very rich, so she work.
- 7 They bought tickets in advance, so they wait in the queue.
- 8 Jane's mother wakes her up, so she use an alarm clock.
- 9 I have already read the book, so I read it again.
- 10 Sam never makes a mess, so he tidy his room very often.

4 Fill in the gaps with *mustn't* or *needn't/don't have to*.

- 1 A: You ...*mustn't*... do that again! It was very naughty!
B: I'm sorry.
- 2 A: Shall I put some petrol in the car?
B: No, you I did it this morning.
- 3 A: You be late tonight.
B: I won't. I'll be home early.
- 4 A: Shall I give you a lift?
B: No, you I'll go by taxi.
- 5 A: You forget to pay the bills today.
B: I've already done it.
- 6 A: You lose the money I gave you.
B: I'll put it in a safe place.
- 7 A: You buy a gift for Daisy's birthday.
B: Alright. I'll just send a card.
- 8 A: Shall we take a picnic with us on Saturday?
B: No, we We're going to eat at a restaurant.

Mustn't - Needn't
(prohibition - lack of necessity)



You **mustn't** be late again, Miss Jones.



You **needn't** iron the shirt. I'll do it.

- ◆ **Must not/Mustn't** (you aren't allowed to/it is against the rules) expresses prohibition.
e.g. You **mustn't** park here. (It is against the rules.)
- ◆ **Needn't** (it isn't necessary) expresses lack of necessity. We can use **don't/doesn't have to** instead of **needn't** with no difference in meaning.
e.g. You **needn't/don't have to** buy me a gift.
(It isn't necessary for you to buy me a gift.)

IN OTHER WORDS

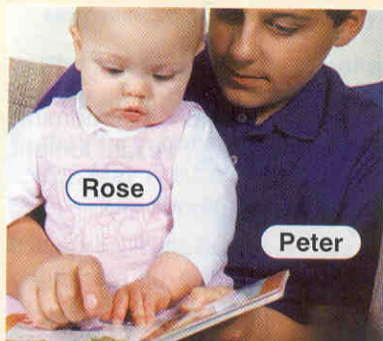
Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 Parking your car in this area is forbidden.
must You **must not park your car** in this area.
- 2 It isn't necessary to buy any meat. We've got plenty.
needn't You **needn't buy any** meat. We've got plenty.
have You **don't have to buy** any meat. We've got plenty.
- 3 Is it necessary for you to call him?
have Do **you have to call** him?

5 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 It isn't necessary to wait for us.
have You ...*don't have to wait*... for us.
- 2 Taking pictures inside the museum is forbidden.
must You inside the museum.
- 3 Is it necessary for you to leave so early?
have Do so early?
- 4 It isn't necessary to go by taxi. I'll give you a lift.
needn't You by taxi. I'll give you a lift.
- 5 Keeping pets in the building is forbidden.
must You in the building.
- 6 It isn't necessary to water the flowers.
have You the flowers.

Can - Could - Be able to (ability)



Peter **can** read but his sister, Rose, **can't**.



Mrs Turner **could** jog before she had the accident.



Rachel **was able to** reach the top of the mountain.

- ◆ **Can** expresses ability and **can't** expresses lack of ability in the present.
e.g. Kate **can** speak a foreign language. Tim **can't** play the piano.
- ◆ **Could** expresses general ability in the past.
e.g. Alan **could** sing very well when he was young. (But now he **can't**.)
- ◆ **Was/Were able to** (managed to do) expresses ability that we had in the past in a particular situation. It shows that someone did something, but with effort.
e.g. It was a very difficult test, but Meryl **was able to** answer all the questions. (She managed to answer all the questions.)
- ◆ **Couldn't** expresses lack of ability in the past, either generally or in a particular situation.
e.g. My little brother **couldn't** ride a bicycle when he was two. (Generally, not in a particular situation.)
Helen tried but she **couldn't** open the door. (She didn't manage to open the door – lack of ability in a particular situation)

We use **could** (not **was/were able to**) with the verbs **see, hear, feel, smell, taste, understand, remember, guess, etc.**
e.g. Marian **could** feel that something was wrong the moment she entered the room. (NOT: ~~Marian was able to feel that...~~)

Can has only present and past tenses. We use **be able to** to form all the other tenses (future simple, present perfect, etc.).
e.g. I hope I'll **be able to** take you out to dinner next week.

6 Look at the prompts given and, in pairs, make sentences, as in the example.

SA: They **can't** enjoy much peace and quiet now.
SB: When the children grow up, they'll **be able to** enjoy some peace and quiet.



NOW

- enjoy much peace and quiet
- go out in the evenings
- do lots of sports
- visit their friends often
- go to the theatre with their friends



7 Fill in the gaps with **can/can't, could/couldn't** or **was/were able to**.

- 1 When I arrived, I **could**... see a few people waiting for the train.
- 2 After saving their money for ten years, they buy a house.
- 3 Sam and Beth speak Italian fluently, can't they?
- 4 you tie your shoelaces when you were four years old?
- 5 It was a very tricky question, but Paul answer it.
- 6 I hear what they were saying because the music was too loud.
- 7 Although it was difficult, the children build a tree house.
- 8 Susan come to the phone. She's busy.

8 Fill in the gaps with **could**, **couldn't** or **was able to**.

I was walking in the woods one evening when something terrible happened. I slipped and fell down a hill into a stream. It was quite dark and I 1) *...couldn't...* see very well. I called for help but no one 2) *.....* hear me. I had hurt my ankle and I 3) *.....* walk very easily, but I tried. After some time, I 4) *.....* start going up the hill again.

It was late and I was cold and wet. I wanted to go home, but it was too far to walk. It took me a long time, but eventually I reached the edge of the woods. There was a house there, so I 5) *.....* call my father. He came in the car and took me home. The following day, the doctor came and examined my ankle. I had to stay in bed for two days. It was a week before I 6) *.....* walk properly again.

9 Choose the correct answer.

- I *...A...* understand what he was saying because he was speaking Spanish.
A couldn't B can't C can
- Steven *.....* walk when he was one year old.
A can't B can C could
- The door was locked so I *.....* go inside.
A will be able to B wasn't able to C can
- We *.....* go out for a meal since we bought the car.
A has been able to B haven't been able to C can
- When I am older, I *.....* live by myself.
A can't B have been able to C will be able to
- I *.....* run faster than my brother now.
A will be able to B could C can
- Jenny *.....* type since she went to college.
A has been able to B can C can't
- I *.....* hear you very well. Please speak louder.
A am able to B can C can't
- We arrived at the shop just as it was closing, so we *.....* do our shopping.
A are able to B can C couldn't
- My brother *.....* drive yet. He's too young.
A can B can't C couldn't

Can - Could
(permission - request - suggestion)

We also use **can** and **could** to:

- ask for permission. **Could** is more formal and polite than **can**.



- make a request. **Could** is more polite than **can**.



- make a suggestion.



10 What do **can** and **could** express in each sentence?

- We **can** watch the new show on TV. (*suggestion*)
- It was cold last Saturday so we **couldn't** go on a picnic.
- Can** I go camping with my friends at the weekend?
- If you are not feeling well, you **could** stay at home.
- Could** you shut the window, please?
- Could** I speak to you for a moment, please?
- Can** you call Greg and tell him I'll be late?

Can - Can't (giving/refusing permission)

- ◆ We use **can** to give permission.
e.g. You **can** sit here.
- ◆ We use **can't** to refuse permission.
e.g. You **can't** use this computer.

11 Look at the pictures and make sentences using **can** or **can't**.

e.g. You **can't** take photographs here.

		
1 take photographs	2 smoke	3 park
		
4 cross the road	5 ride a bicycle	6 have coffee

12 Fill in the gaps with **can**, **can't** or **could**. Then, say what they express in each sentence.

- 1 A: Mum, ...**can**... I go on holiday with my friends this year? (*asking for permission*)
B: I'm afraid you You're too young.
- 2 A: Sir, I need to leave work early tonight, if that's possible.
B: You leave early if you finish all your work first.
- 3 A: My mum always said that I was a clever child.
B: What do you mean?
A: Well, I read and write when I was four years old.
- 4 A: It's raining, so we go out tonight.
B: Well, we'll stay in then.
A: But, I want to do something nice. I'm bored.
B: We play chess.
- 5 A: Excuse me?
B: Yes.
A: you tell me the time, please?
B: Yes, it's almost two o'clock.

- 6 A: What skills do you have?
B: Well, I use computers and I speak two foreign languages.
- 7 A: What shall we buy Mum for her birthday?
B: We get a big box of chocolates.
- 8 A: It's hot in here. you open the window, please?
B: Of course.
- 9 A: I'm going to the shops. I won't be long.
B: Alright.
A: Do you want anything?
B: Yes. you get me a magazine?

Must - Can't (logical assumption)



They **must** be lost.



They **can't** be at home.

- ◆ We use **must** for positive logical assumptions.
e.g. Jason **must** be at work. (*I'm sure Jason is at work.*)
- ◆ We use **can't** for negative logical assumptions.
e.g. Sam **can't** know about this. (*I'm sure Sam doesn't know about this. NOT: Sam ~~mustn't~~ know about this.*)

13 Fill in the gaps with **must** or **can't**.

- 1 A: Wow! Look at that man in the beautiful car.
B: Yes, he ...**must**... be very rich.
- 2 A: I passed my exam!
B: Congratulations. You be very happy.
- 3 A: Aunt Sheila's dog died.
B: Oh no. She be very sad.
- 4 A: That woman always wears smart clothes and lots of jewellery.
B: I know. She be poor.
- 5 A: I've been working all day without a break.
B: Sit down, you be really tired.
- 6 A: I've finished tidying my room. I'm ready to leave now.
B: You be ready so soon! You only started ten minutes ago!

14 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 You can go out until you finish eating.
- 2 Dad, must I borrow the car, please?
- 3 I haven't be able to write the letter yet.
- 4 He can't run long distances when he was a boy.
- 5 You mustn't wake up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
- 6 He drives a Porsche. He must be poor.

Revision Box

15 Fill in the gaps with the present simple, present continuous, past simple, present perfect, future simple or be going to.



Charles Maxwell **1** ...works... (work) in a bank in the centre of London. At the moment he **2**
 (look) for a new house. He **3**
 (live) with his parents all of his life but now he **4**
 (want) to move because he **5**
 (decide) to get married. So far, he **6**
 (look) at ten houses, but he **7**
 (not/like) any of them. He **8**
 (see) another one later today. He thinks he **9**
 (like) it because he **10**
 (already/see) a photograph of it and it **11**
 (be) beautiful. Good luck, Charles!

ORAL Activity

Alan Roland has just become the director of the company he works for. Look at the information below and talk about the changes in Alan's life, using the modal verbs in the list.

has to - will have to - needn't/doesn't have to - can - will be able to - won't be able to

e.g. Alan has to go to work earlier now.



Alan

Mary (wife)

Rick and Kate (children)

- go to work earlier now
- drive to work (a chauffeur picks him up)
- work overtime sometimes now
- send the children to a better school next year
- Mary not work any more (they have enough money)
- move to a bigger house next month
- take a family holiday this year (Alan has too much work)

WRITING Activity

Look at your notes from the Oral Activity and complete the letter that Alan has sent to his friend.

Dear Keith,

I'm writing to tell you that I got a promotion last month. I am the director of the company now, so our life has changed in a number of ways.

To begin with, I have to go to work earlier.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

The Infinitive



They **want to spend** their life together.
 They **would like to have** two children.
 They **may buy** a car next year.

The infinitive is the root form of the verb. There are two kinds of infinitive:

- the **to - infinitive** e.g. *to stay, to go*
- the **bare infinitive** which is the root form of the verb without to. e.g. *stay, go*

We use the to - infinitive:

- ◆ after verbs such as *advise, agree, decide, expect, hope, manage, offer, promise, refuse, seem, want, etc.*
e.g. *He refused to answer my question.*
- ◆ after **be + adjective** such as *glad, happy, nice, sorry, etc.*
e.g. *It is nice to be back home.*
Jack will be glad to see you.
- ◆ after some verbs such as *know, learn, remember, ask, want to know, etc.* when there is a question word (who, what, where, how, etc.) after them. 'Why' is not followed by an infinitive, but by a subject + verb.
e.g. *I don't know how to answer this question.*
but *I didn't know why he was crying.*
- ◆ with **too and enough.**
e.g. *It's too cold to go outside.*
Joe isn't old enough to vote.
- ◆ to express purpose.
e.g. *I went to the florist's to buy some flowers.*

We use the bare infinitive:

- ◆ after **modal verbs** (can, must, etc.).
e.g. *You can go home now.*
- ◆ after the verbs **let and make.**
e.g. *My parents let me have a party for my birthday last month.*

1

Write what the following words/phrases are followed by: **to - infinitive (T.I.)** or **bare infinitive (B.I.)**.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------|
| 1 could + | <i>B.I.</i> | 9 make sb + | ..... |
| 2 agree + | ..... | 10 seem + | ..... |
| 3 let + | ..... | 11 expect + | ..... |
| 4 must + | ..... | 12 can't + | ..... |
| 5 want + | ..... | 13 it is nice + | ..... |
| 6 learn + | ..... | 14 hope + | ..... |
| 7 decide + | ..... | 15 may + | ..... |
| 8 promise + | ..... | 16 advise + | ..... |

2

In pairs, say what your parents (don't) let or (don't) make you do using the prompts below.

SA: *My parents don't let me watch TV late at night.*
 SB: *My parents make me study hard.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| • watch TV late at night | • tidy my room |
| • study hard | • invite friends home |
| • go to parties at the weekend | • have breakfast every morning |
| • wear anything I want | • play music loud |

3

Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form.

climb, help, go, open, buy, post, stay, take, wash, ask

- I think I will ...*buy*... some flowers for my mother.
- Bill went to the post office some letters.
- Let me you with your homework.
- I want a mountain before I'm thirty.
- We must the car today. It's very dirty.
- He's too young in the house alone.
- I don't know how the windows in this room.
- I couldn't on holiday last summer.
- Can I you a question, please?
- They made her the money out of the safe.

Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

The Subject of the Infinitive



I want to play with the yellow ball.



I want you to draw a picture.

◆ When the subject of the main verb and the subject of the infinitive is the same, then the subject of the infinitive is omitted.

e.g. I would like to stay here. (The subject of the main verb and the infinitive is "I".)

◆ When the subject of the infinitive is different from the subject of the main verb, then the subject of the infinitive is not omitted. The subject of the infinitive can be a name (Mark), a noun (the boys) or an object pronoun (me, you, them, etc.) and goes before the infinitive.

e.g. I would like	Lucy the girls her	to stay here.
-------------------	--------------------------	---------------

4 Rephrase the following, as in the example.

- You must help me.
I want *you to help me*.
- They mustn't leave now.
I don't want
- She must eat her dinner.
I want
- He must visit Aunt Linda.
I want
- You mustn't talk to strangers.
I don't want
- Fiona mustn't go on holiday by herself.
I don't want
- They must do their homework now.
I want
- You must go to bed now.
I want

5 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the infinitive.

be - leave - do - make - meet - tell



1 I really don't know what ... *to do* ...



2 You mustn't anyone about this.



3 I can my own clothes.



4 I want you quiet.



5 I don't think the boss will let me earlier today.



6 I'm pleased you.

6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the infinitive.

Dear Emma,

I'm writing (1) *to invite*... (invite) you to my birthday party next Saturday.

As you know, I'll be sixteen, so this is going to be a very special occasion for me. I've invited almost all of my friends and I really hope they'll all be able (2) (come). Could I (3) (ask) you (4) (help) me with the preparations, though? I would like (5) (decorate) the house with white and pink flowers, but I'm afraid I won't (6) (have) time to do everything by myself. I've also decided (7) (make) my own cake and I'll certainly need your help with that!

Please write back soon and let me (8) (know) if you can make it.

Best wishes,
Sandra

Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

Too/Enough



He is **too short to reach** the biscuits.



She's **tall enough to reach** the top shelf.

◆ **Too** goes **before** adjectives or adverbs. It has a negative meaning and shows that something is more than enough, more than necessary or more than wanted.

too + adjective/adverb + to - infinitive

e.g. Sarah is **too young to go** to school. (Sarah is so young that she can't go to school.)

He speaks **too quickly for me to understand** him. (He speaks so quickly that I can't understand him.)

◆ **Enough** goes **before** nouns but **after** adjectives or adverbs. It has a positive meaning and shows that there is as much of something as is wanted or needed.

adjective/adverb + enough } + to - infinitive
enough + noun

e.g. She's **old enough to go** out on her own. (She can go out on her own.)

I've got **enough butter to make** a cake. (I can make a cake.)

enough ... + to - infinitive (positive meaning)

e.g. He is **strong enough to lift** the suitcase.

not enough ... + to - infinitive (negative meaning)

e.g. He is **not strong enough to lift** the suitcase.

too ... + to - infinitive (negative meaning)

e.g. He is **too weak to lift** the suitcase.

too ... for somebody/something + to - infinitive (negative meaning)

e.g. The suitcase is **too heavy for him to lift**.

7

Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 It's only 6 o'clock. It's too	a enough to live alone.
2 He wasn't tall	b cold to go out without a coat.
3 I'm not old	c enough to go to bed now.
4 It's too	d enough to reach the cupboard.
5 The girl wasn't early	e expensive for me to buy.
6 The dress was too	f early to go to bed.
7 I'm not tired	g rich enough to buy a yacht.
8 We aren't	h enough to catch the train.

8

Complete the responses using **too** or **enough**.

- Can she win the race? (fast) Yes, *she's fast enough*.
- Can he buy this car? (cheap)
No,
- Can he wear this jacket? (small)
No,
- Can she carry the bags? (heavy)
No,
- Can he hear the music? (loud)
Yes,
- Can he touch the ceiling? (short)
No,

9

Rewrite the sentences using **too** or **enough**.

- Don't wear a T-shirt. It's cold outside.
It's *too cold outside to wear a T-shirt*.
- It's very hot today. Let's go to the beach.
It's
- We're not going to the party yet. It's early.
It's
- You can't touch the ceiling. You're short.
You're not
- You can buy this sweater. It's cheap.
This sweater is
- You can walk to school alone. You aren't too young.
You're
- They can buy a luxury yacht. They're rich.
They're
- You can lift this box. It's light.
This box

Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

The "-ing form"



Mr Scott likes painting.
Painting is his favourite hobby.

The **"-ing form"** is the verb form with the **-ing** suffix.

e.g. Sam likes **fishing**.

We use the "-ing form":

- ◆ as a noun. e.g. **Walking** is a good form of exercise.
- ◆ usually after the verbs **like, love, dislike, hate, enjoy, prefer**.
e.g. Helen **likes watching** old films on TV.
- ◆ after the verbs **start, begin, stop, finish**.
e.g. He **started writing** his composition an hour ago.
- ◆ after prepositions.
e.g. I'm tired **of going** to work by bus every morning.
- ◆ after the verb **go** when we talk about activities.
e.g. We usually **go skiing** at the weekends.
- ◆ after the expressions **be busy, it's no use, it's no good, it's (not) worth, what's the use of ...?, there's no point in**.
e.g. Father is **busy repairing** the car.
- ◆ after verbs such as **avoid, admit, confess, deny, look forward to, mind, regret, risk, spend, suggest, etc.**
e.g. Tony **avoided answering** my question.

NOTE:

- 1 We can use the **-ing form** or the **to - infinitive** after the verbs **start, begin, continue, like, love, prefer** and **hate**. e.g. He **started writing/to write** his speech last night.
- 2 We use the **to - infinitive** and not the **-ing form** after the expressions **would love/would like/would prefer**. e.g. I **would love to have** my own house one day. (NOT: ~~I would love having my own house one day.~~)
- 3 We can use the **bare infinitive** or the **-ing form** after the verbs **see, hear, feel** and **watch**. Note the difference in meaning, however.
 - a) I **saw Peter cross** the street. (I saw the whole action – by the time I left, Peter was on the other side of the street.)
 - b) I **saw Peter crossing** the street. (I only saw part of the action – I don't know if Peter got to the other side of the street by the time I left.)

10

Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 Writing letters to friends	a is very tiring.
2 The baby started	b is bad for your teeth.
3 Running long distances	c crying when I left the room.
4 Speaking foreign languages	d skiing last winter.
5 They went	e is one of my hobbies.
6 Eating lots of sugar	f washing the dishes.
7 Tom doesn't like	g is useful for everyone.

11

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

- 1 I would like ...**to go**... (go) out tonight.
- 2 He hates (play) cards.
- 3 She is too excited (sleep).
- 4 You must (get up) early in the morning.
- 5 I regret (spend) so much money last weekend.
- 6 They go (run) every Tuesday evening.
- 7 I saw Helen (wash) the dishes. It took her only ten minutes.
- 8 I started (learn) French two years ago.
- 9 He was very pleased (see) her again.
- 10 The dentist advised him (stop) eating sweets.

Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

12 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.



Last weekend, Toby's parents let him (1) ...go... (go) to the funfair with his friends. When they arrived, they didn't know which ride (2) (try) first, but someone suggested (3) (start) with the ghost train. Everyone agreed that this was a very good idea. After they had finished (4) (ride) the ghost train, they moved on to the other rides. Toby admitted (5) (be) afraid on the fast roller-coaster, but he was still happy enough (6) (go) on it three times! He and his friends wanted (7) (try) all of the rides but they were too exhausted (8) (do) everything in one day. Toby suggested (9) (come) back the following weekend. Then, they all decided (10) (go) home. They all loved (11) (visit) the funfair and they are looking forward to (12) (return) this weekend.

13 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

- 1 A: Are you busy ...reading... (read)?
B: Yes, but I don't mind (help) you. What do you want?
A: Do you know the answer to this question?
B: Yes. Look, I'll show you how (do) it yourself.
- 2 A: I've decided (get) a part-time job.
B: Really? What kind of job do you want (find)?
A: Well, I really enjoy (look after) animals, so I wouldn't mind (work) in a pet shop.
- 3 A: The police caught the man who burgled my house last month.
B: Really? How did they manage (catch) him?
A: I don't know, but he admitted (steal) things in our neighbourhood.
B: Well, I'm happy (hear) that the thief was caught.

- 4 A: Let's (go) to the ice-rink at the weekend.
B: You know I hate (ice-skate).
A: But you've only tried it once. Anyway, you love (roller-skate). It's the same thing.
B: That's different.
- 5 A: Dad, Lucy has started (have) riding lessons. Will you let me (go) riding too?
B: Do you really want (go)?
A: Yes, I'd (love) to.
B: Well, I'll talk to your mother and, if she agrees, I'm sure we can (arrange) some lessons for you.
A: Thanks Dad.
- 6 A: Did you know that Scott is going to ask Laura (marry) him?
B: Really? How do you know that?
A: I saw them (look) at engagement rings in a jewellery shop.
B: Oh, that's interesting.
- 7 A: Are you looking forward to (go) on holiday?
B: Yes, I'm busy (plan) my week.
A: I suggest (visit) the museums and art galleries. They're fascinating.
B: That's a good idea. Actually, I wanted (ask) you what the town is like before I decide what (do).

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 Jerry was so short that he couldn't reach the top shelf.
too Jerry was **too short to reach** the top shelf.
- 2 Fiona is too young to go out at night.
old Fiona isn't **old enough to go** out at night.
- 3 Driving fast is dangerous.
drive It is **dangerous to drive** fast.

14 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 Alec is too short to be a basketball player.
tall Alec isn't ...**tall enough to be**... a basketball player.
- 2 Exercising regularly is good for you.
exercise It is good regularly.
- 3 Mary was so late that she didn't catch the bus.
too Mary was the bus.
- 4 This book is too boring for me to read.
enough This book isn't read.

Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

15 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I'm not too tall to reach the top cupboard.
- 2 He is enough fast to win the race.
- 3 I'm old enough travelling alone.
- 4 You must to get up now.
- 5 She suggested to go to the cinema on Friday night.
- 6 He promised sending me a postcard.
- 7 It's no use to try to change her mind.
- 8 She knocked before to open the door.
- 9 He is tired enough to come to the party.
- 10 I am poor enough to buy a new sports car.

Revision Box

16 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I'm thirsty. IC..... for two hours.
A have run C have been running
B am running
- 2 Kate and Alice enjoy going to the theatre.
A Both B Neither C All
- 3 This is the park I take my dog every afternoon.
A where B what C which
- 4 The children are tired. I think they to bed early tonight.
A are going B will go C go
- 5 Alice to Japan four times so far.
A has gone B has been going C has been
- 6 his boss let him leave early?
A Shall B Must C Will
- 7 Jack is in a hurry. He his boss in twenty minutes and he has to be on time.
A will meet B is meeting C meets
- 8 My husband painted our house all by
A himself B him C his
- 9 The bus drivers were on strike yesterday, but Alex get to work.
A was able to B has been able to C could
- 10 Robert lunch when his uncle phoned.
A was having B has had C had

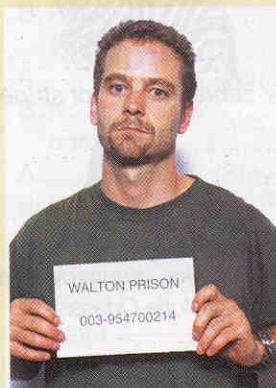
ORAL

Activity

Jake Potts, a dangerous criminal, has escaped from prison. Look at the information in the poster below and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. Jake Potts managed to escape from Walton Prison this morning.

WANTED: JAKE POTTS



HAVE YOU SEEN THIS MAN?

**1 m 85
85 kilos
Brown hair
Brown eyes**

- manage/escape/Walton Prison this morning
- make/people/trust him
- be clever enough/disguise himself
- enjoy/go/bars and cafés
- police/suggest/look out for him in these places
- police/continue/look for him
- police/advise/people/keep away from him and avoid/talk/him
- anyone who/see/him/should/contact the police on 263419

WRITING

Activity

You hear a news bulletin on the radio about Jake Potts. Look at the Oral Activity again and complete the bulletin below.

This is the nine o'clock news. A dangerous criminal managed to escape from Walton Prison this morning. Jake Potts makes people

.....

.....







.....

.....

.....

Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10)

1 Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences using *who* or *which*.

	
1 <i>Marconi/invent the radio</i>	2 <i>a washing-machine/wash clothes</i>
	
3 <i>Bell/invent the telephone</i>	4 <i>zebras/have got stripes</i>
	
5 <i>a vacuum cleaner/clean carpets</i>	6 <i>Jackie Kennedy/marry Aristotle Onassis</i>

- Marconi was the man who invented the radio.*
-
-
-
-
-

2 Choose the correct answer.

- ...*A*... dog is this?
A Whose B Who C Who's
- That was the year I bought my first car.
A where B when C why
- This is the restaurant we ate last weekend.
A where B who C when
- That's the man garden is always full of flowers.
A who's B whose C who
- That's the house she lives.
A when B where C who
- The year I was born my parents moved to the country.
A why B where C when
- There's no reason he can't come with us.
A where B when C why
- Did she say she was late?
A why B who C whose

3 Fill in the gaps with the correct pronoun.

- Rebecca has got a kitten. She found ...*it*... in the park.
- Where are my keys? can't find
- This is Terry. This motorbike is
- "Now listen, children. Behave at the party."
- The Smiths came to our house yesterday. brought some flowers.
- I've got a dog and Fiona has got one too, but my dog is older than
- Mary decorated the cake
- I left my dictionary at home. Can I use please?

4 Rewrite the sentences using *both ... and* or *neither ... nor*.

- Hilary likes skiing. Emily likes skiing, too.
Both Hilary and Emily like skiing.
- Samantha goes shopping on Saturdays. Eric goes shopping on Saturdays, too.
.....
- Brian doesn't play football. Simon doesn't play football, either.
.....
- Peter is a good dancer. Sally is a good dancer, too.
.....
- David doesn't know how to drive. Linda doesn't know how to drive, either.
.....
- Jane doesn't like carrots. I don't like carrots, either.
.....

5 Choose the correct answer.

- You ...*B*... buy any biscuits because we've got lots already.
A could B needn't C can't
- You telephone your uncle tomorrow. He wants to speak to you.
A must B are able to C can't
- You play ball games near the windows.
A don't have to B needn't C can't
- I speak to you in my office, please?
A Can't B Must C Could
- He speak two languages when he was ten years old.
A needn't B could C may
- Martha leave hospital yesterday.
A can't B can C was able to

6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.



Last weekend I went 1) *...camping...* (camp) with my brother. I expected 2) (have) a terrible time, but, in fact, I didn't want 3) (go) home at the end of the trip. We managed 4) (put up) our tent by ourselves and we were very pleased 5) (see) that it didn't fall down again! After we had finished 6) (put up) the tent, we began 7) (make) some sandwiches because we were very hungry after all that hard work! During the weekend we went 8) (swim) in the river and we went 9) (walk) in the countryside. We had a lovely time. 10) (camp) is great!

7 Fill in the gaps with *too* or *enough*.

- I'm not old *...enough...* to go to nightclubs.
- I'm not lucky to have my own bedroom. I share it with my sister.
- My brother is young to go to school. He's still a baby.
- The bag is heavy for me to carry.
- The books are small to put in this box.
- It is hot to wear a jacket today.

8 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- Mary was so tired that she couldn't study any more. **too** Mary was *...too tired to study...* any more.
- The boys are too young to play in the street. **old** The boys play in the street.
- This car is too expensive for him to buy. **not** This car is to buy.
- Jim was so shocked that he couldn't say anything. **too** Jim was anything.

- Alice is too short to be a model. **tall** Alice isn't to be a model.
- Meeting old friends is always nice. **to** It is old friends.
- Helen was so excited that she couldn't sleep. **too** Helen sleep.

9 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A: I *...met...* (meet) Simon Jones last week.
B: Really. I (not/see) him for a long time.
- A: (you/do) anything this evening?
B: No, I (stay) at home this evening because I (be) tired.
- A: (Steve/phone) you yesterday?
B: No, he (not/phone) me. I (probably/give) him a call later this evening.
- A: (be) you busy?
B: Yes, I (be).
A: What (you/do)?
B: I (study) for an exam at the moment.
- A: Why are your eyes red?
B: Because I (work) on the computer for three hours.
- A: (you/ever/go) to France?
B: Yes, I (go) there on holiday last year.
A: I (never/go) there, but I want to go next year.
- A: How long (you/live) in Russia?
B: I (live) here since I was born.
- A: (you/post) the party invitations yet?
B: Yes, I (do) it this morning.
- A: Why are you crying?
B: Because I (just/cut) my finger.
- A: We (go) to a restaurant last night.
B: (be) the food good?
A: Yes, I (enjoy) it very much.

10 Correct the mistakes.

- He is the man who's daughter won the competition.
- I want he to help me in the garden.
- Did you hear him to shout?
- We went to the bakery for to buy some bread.
- Would you like me do the washing-up?
- When have you met her?
- He is tired because he has painted the gate since this morning.
- It's not worth to wait any more.

Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

Past Perfect Simple



What **had** Lesley **done** before her husband came home?
She **had** cooked dinner, but she **hadn't** laid the table.

We form the past perfect simple with **had** and the **past participle** of the main verb.

We form questions by putting **had** before the subject.
We form negations by putting **not** after **had**.

Affirmative			
	Long form	Short form	
I He/She/It You/We/They	had	'd	} finished/ left.
Interrogative			
Had	I he/she/it you/we/they	} finished/ left?	
Negative			
	Long form	Short form	
I He/She/It You/We/They	had not	hadn't	} finished/ left.

1

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past perfect simple.

- Jason ...*had returned*... (return) home before the storm broke out.
- (Lucy/pack) her suitcase by the time you called her?
- The children (finish) doing their homework by nine o'clock.
- (Julie/type) the letters by the time her boss came to the office?
- I (not /finish) my lunch when uncle Bill came.
- After Sarah (do) the shopping, she had coffee with her friends at a café.
- When I got to the garage, the mechanic (not/repair) my car.
- The boys were frightened because they (not/be) on a plane before.

2

It was Marie's birthday yesterday and she gave a party for her friends. What had she done before the day of the party? Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: *What had Marie done before the day of the party?*
SB: *She had prepared the food.*



1 prepare/the food



2 put up/the decorations



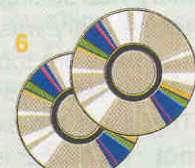
3 bake/a cake



4 clean/the house



5 send/the invitations



6 borrow/some CDs

Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

Use

We use the past perfect simple:

- ◆ for an action which happened in the past before another past action. The action which happened **earlier** in the past is in the **past perfect simple**, and the action which happened **later** is in the **past simple**.



They **had done** their homework before they **went** out to play yesterday afternoon. (= They did their homework first and then they went out to play.)

- ◆ for an action which happened before a stated time in the past.

She **had watered** all the flowers **by five o'clock** in the afternoon. (= She had finished watering the flowers before five o'clock.)



- ◆ as the past equivalent of the present perfect simple. That is, we use the **past perfect simple** for an action which started and finished in the **past**, but we use the **present perfect simple** for an action which started in the **past** and finished in the **present**.

e.g. Jill **wasn't** at home. She **had gone** out. (Jill was out then.)
 Jill **isn't** at home. She **has gone** out. (Jill is out now.)

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the past perfect simple include:

before, after, already, just, till/until, when, by, by the time, etc.

3

Match column A with column B to make correct sentences. Which is the first action in each pair?

Column A

- 1 By the time he reached the airport *c (first action: the plane had already taken off)*
- 2 Mary was angry because
- 3 The bank robbers had escaped
- 4 We went to the theatre
- 5 The actress gave an interview

Column B

- a her husband had forgotten her birthday.
- b after we had bought the tickets.
- c the plane had already taken off.
- d after she had won the prize.
- e before the police arrived.

4

Use the prompts to make sentences, as in the example.

- e.g. a) *After/When Sue had packed her suitcase, she called a taxi.*
 b) *Sue had packed her suitcase before she called a taxi.*

First

Then

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|-----------------|
| • Sue/pack/her suitcase | → | call/a taxi |
| • Bob/eat/the meal | → | pay/the bill |
| • Mary/read/the contract | → | sign/it |
| • the boys/watch/the match | → | turn off/the TV |
| • Peter/borrow/some money | → | buy/a car |

5

Join the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 She cleaned the house. Then, she watched TV. (after)
After she had cleaned the house, she watched TV.
- 2 I found a solution to my problem. Then, I felt happier. (when)
- 3 The boys finished their homework. Then, they went out to play. (before)

- 4 He locked the door. Then, the phone rang. (after)

- 5 Sarah washed the dishes. Then, her husband arrived. (by the time)
- 6 The concert finished. Then, the fans left the stadium. (when)
- 7 The play started. Then, Henry arrived at the theatre. (already...when)

Short Answers

e.g. Had you read the book before you saw the film?
Yes, I had./No, I hadn't.

Had you ...?	Yes, I/we had.
	No, I/we hadn't.
Had he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it had.
	No, he/she/it hadn't.
Had they ...?	Yes, they had.
	No, they hadn't.

6 Rick and Alison went on holiday last weekend. Look at the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: Had they bought tickets before they left?
SB: Yes, they had.



- buy / tickets ✓
- lock / house ✓
- leave / car at the garage X
- book / hotel room X
- set / burglar alarm ✓
- feed / the cat ✓
- phone / neighbours X

Past Perfect Simple - Past Continuous - Past Simple

Past Perfect Simple

• We use the past perfect simple for a past action which happened before another past action.

Past Continuous

• We use the past continuous for a past action which was in progress when it was interrupted by another action.

Past Simple

• We use the past simple for actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.



They **had eaten** dinner when their friends came. (They had dinner first. Their friends came afterwards.)



They **were eating** dinner when their friends came. (They were still eating dinner when their friends came.)



They **ate** dinner when their friends came. (Their friends came and they had dinner immediately.)

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple, past perfect simple or past continuous.

- 1 A: Where **1** ...were... (be) you last night?
B: I **2** (be) at the cinema. I **3**
(watch) a great film when a fire **4**
(break out).
A: Oh gosh! How **5** (it/happen)?
B: Someone **6** (drop) a match
into a waste-paper basket.
- 2 A: **1** (you/go) to the beach on Saturday?
B: No, I **2** (go) on Sunday instead.
A: **3** (you/have) a good time?

- B: No, I didn't. I **4** (sun-
bathe) when it **5** (start)
raining, so I **6** (leave) in
a hurry.
- 3 A: I **1** (lose) my keys yesterday.
B: Where **2** (you/lose) them?
A: I don't know. I **3** (go) shop-
ping and when I got back, I **4**
(realise) that I **5** (leave)
my keys somewhere.

Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

Past Perfect Continuous



He had been working on the computer for an hour before she came to help him.

We form the past perfect continuous with **had been** and the main verb with the **-ing** suffix. We form questions by putting **had** before the subject.

e.g. *Had Peter been driving for two hours before he had the accident?*

We form negations by putting **not** after **had**.

e.g. *He had not/hadn't been driving for two hours before he had the accident.*

Affirmative			
	Long form	Short form	
I He/She/It You/We/They	had	'd	} been studying.

Interrogative			
Had	I he/she/it you/we/they		} been studying?

Negative			
	Long form	Short form	
I He/She/It You/We/They	had not	hadn't	} been studying.

Short Answers

We form short answers for the past perfect continuous in the same way as for the past perfect simple (see page 76).

e.g. *Had you been sleeping for long when I called you last night? Yes, I had./No, I hadn't.*

Use

◆ We use the past perfect continuous as the past equivalent of the present perfect continuous. That is, the **past perfect continuous** puts emphasis on the duration of an action which started and finished in the **past**, whereas the **present perfect continuous** puts emphasis on the duration of an action which started in the past and continues up to the **present**.

e.g. *He had been waiting for the bus for half an hour before it came. (He isn't waiting for the bus now.)*
He has been waiting for the bus for half an hour. (He is still waiting for the bus.)

◆ We use the past perfect continuous to show that the result of an action which happened in the past for some time was evident in the past, whereas we use the present perfect continuous to show that the result of an action which started in the past is evident in the **present**.

e.g. *She was tired. She had been working hard all day yesterday. (We could see that she was tired. The result was obvious in the past.)*
She is tired. She has been working hard all day. (We can see that she is tired. The result is obvious in the present.)

Time Expressions

Time expressions used with the past perfect continuous include: *for, since, how long, before, until, etc.*

8 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past perfect continuous.

- Sophie ...*had been painting*... (paint) the walls all day before she finished them.
- (you/wait) long when the boss announced that he couldn't see you?
- Tom (look) for a job for six months when he found one.
- We (watch) TV for half an hour when the doorbell rang.
- They (sunbathe) for an hour when it started to rain.
- Stan (work) as a postman for forty years when he retired.
- I (live) in France for ten years when I met my husband.

Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

9

Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the past perfect continuous.

play, work, walk, wait, discuss, sit



1 She was wet. She ...had been walking... in the rain.



2 They were happy. They together for hours.



3 He was irritated. He for the bus for half an hour.



4 He was hot. He in the barn.



5 She was suntanned. She in the sun for hours.



6 They were tired. They business problems for four hours.

10

Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect simple or the past perfect continuous.

- 1 A: Are you alright? You look tired.
 B: Yes, I am. I didn't sleep very well. I 1) ...had just gone... (just/go) to sleep last night when a lot of noise outside woke me up. I got up and went to the window. I 2) (stand) there for a few minutes when two police cars stopped outside my house. I went downstairs and a policeman told me that two prisoners 3) (escape) from prison and were hiding in the area.
 A: Did they catch them again?
 B: Yes, but I didn't sleep very well after that.
- 2 A: Did you do anything exciting at the weekend?
 B: Not really. By the time I 1) (do)

10

my shopping and cleaned the house, Saturday was nearly over. What about you?

- A: Well, I 2) (plan) to go out with my friend but she was late and I 3) (wait) for nearly two hours before she phoned me to say she couldn't come after all.
 B: That's a shame. Next weekend, we should go somewhere nice together.

11

Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect simple or the past simple.

- A Bert and Willy 1) ...went... (go) fishing on Sunday. They 2) (take) some sandwiches and some coffee with them. They 3) (sit) on the river bank all day, but by the time they 4) (leave), they 5) (not/catch) anything.
- B James 1) (be) late for work this morning. He 2) (forget) to set his alarm clock and then, when he 3) (get) to work, his boss 4) (be) very angry.
- C Barry 1) (have) lots of work to do yesterday. He 2) (get up) very early and by six o'clock, he 3) (finish). Then, he 4) (have) time to relax.
- D Yesterday, Liz 1) (go) to a party. She 2) (have) a great time, but when she 3) (get) home, she 4) (realise) she 5) (forget) her jacket. So, she 6) (go) back to the party to get it.

12

Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect simple or the past perfect continuous.

Yesterday was a bad day for Andrew. He 1) ...hadn't slept... (not/sleep) well because there was a terrible storm in the night. After he 2) (have) a shower, he made breakfast. After he 3) (eat), he got into his car and drove to work. He 4) (only/drive) for five minutes when he remembered that he 5) (leave) his briefcase at home. He turned the car around and went home again. Then, he realised that he 6) (lock) himself out. The keys were still inside the house! Andrew was already late for work, so he decided to leave the briefcase and go to work. When he arrived, his secretary told him that his boss 7) (try) to call him at home. Andrew went to find his boss. When he asked his boss why he 8) (call), he told him that it hadn't been necessary for him to come to work that day after all! Poor Andrew drove all the way home again.

Revision Box

13 Cross out the unnecessary word.

- The woman who she lives next door is a flight attendant.
- Sam is going to on holiday next month.
- Karen had been finished her homework by the time her parents came home.
- Peter couldn't to dive when he was young.
- Mary did used to like sweets, but now she doesn't.
- Neither Liz nor Kim is not tall.
- The box was too heavy for Paul to lift it.
- That blouse isn't yours. It's mine blouse.
- He is not never late for work.
- Jack is not too short to reach the ceiling.

14 Choose the correct answer.

- That's the girl ...**B**... dog bit me last week.
A who B whose C that
- I the house all day, I need a break!
A am tidying B have been tidying C tidy
- Charles and Monica are doctors.
A both B all C none
- You finish your homework before you go out to play.
A mustn't B must C can't
- Archie went his uncle.
A phone B to phone C phoning
- My father lets me up late on Saturday nights.
A stay B to stay C staying
- Marion denied the window.
A to break B break C breaking
- I your mother three times this week.
A have seen B see C have been seeing
- Roger a luxury yacht.
A has recently bought B buys C was buying
- I fairy tales when I was a child.
A was reading B used to read C have read

ORAL Activity

Linda is married to Nick and they have a baby. Last weekend, Linda had to go away on business, so Nick was at home. Linda asked him to do some things. Look at the list and say what Nick had or hadn't done by the time Linda returned home.

e.g. Nick had fed the baby.

feed the baby		✓
cook something		✗
do the shopping		✓
make the beds		✗
take the rubbish out		✗
put the baby's toys away		✓
pay the phone bill		✓

WRITING Activity

Linda is writing a letter to her friend Lucy. Look at the Oral Activity again and complete Linda's letter.

Dear Lucy,

Hi! I hope you're well. I'm writing to tell you what a busy weekend I had. As you know, I had to go away on business, so Nick was at home with the baby. As usual, he had done only half the things I had asked him to. He had fed the baby but he hadn't

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

When I asked him why he hadn't done all the things, he told me he had just been lazy! I was so angry with him!

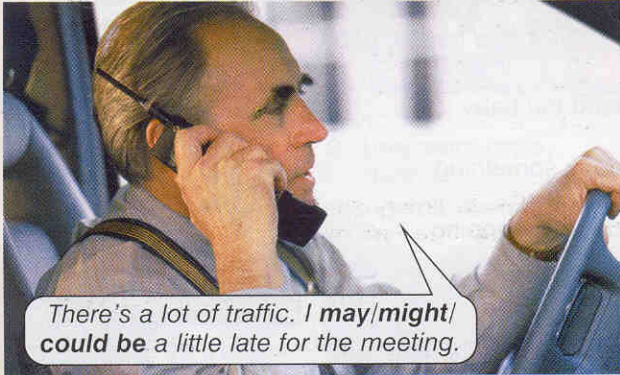
Anyway, I've got to go now because I have a million things to do and I haven't got time to be lazy.

Best wishes,
Linda

UNIT 12

Modal Verbs II

May - Might - Could (possibility - asking for permission)



◆ We use **may/might/could** to express possibility.
e.g. 'Where's Paul?' 'He **may/might/could be** at the cinema.' (Perhaps he is at the cinema.)

◆ We use **May I...?/Could I...?/Can I...?** to ask for permission. Note the difference in the following questions.

May I use your telephone? (Formal – we do not know the other person very well.)

Can I use your phone? (Informal – we know the other person very well.)

Could I use your phone? (more polite than 'can'.)

◆ When someone asks for our permission, we can reply in the following ways: **Yes, of course./Of course./Certainly**. When we know the other person very well, we can reply with **Sure.** or **No problem.**

maybe (adv) = perhaps

e.g. Jack isn't here. **Maybe** he's at home.

may be (modal + bare infinitive)

e.g. Sheila **may be** in the office.

1

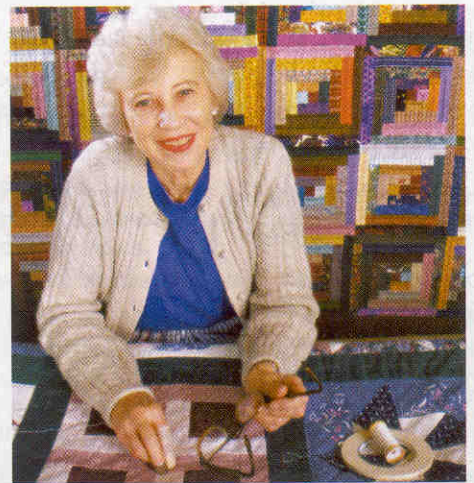
Fill in the gaps with **may or may not** and one of the verbs from the list.

leave, buy, come, be, enjoy, cut, go, visit, cook

- I ...**may not go**... to school tomorrow. I don't feel very well.
- Father the grass today. It looks as if it is going to rain.
- Dan isn't at home. He at the football field.
- I a new dress. I haven't really got enough money.
- We the Smiths. There is a film on TV we want to watch.
- Let's take Molly to the funfair. She it.
- Mother something special tonight. It's my birthday.
- I work early today. I have almost finished everything I have to do.
- Sally home late tonight. She's got a lot of work at the office.

2

Underline the correct answer.



- A: Good morning, madam. **1) May/Must** I help you?
 B: You **2) might/mustn't** be able to. I need a ball of wool that is the same colour as my jumper.
 A: Just a moment, please. I **3) must/mustn't** look in the stock room. We **4) might/might not** have some left. I'm not sure.
 B: The wool **5) must/mustn't** be exactly the same colour, it **6) must/mustn't** be different.
 A: **7) Could/Mustn't** I ask you a question, madam?
 B: Yes.
 A: What do you want the wool for?
 B: I **8) could/must** finish knitting this jumper. It only has one sleeve at the moment!

Should - Ought to (advice)
Shall - Will
(offer - suggestion - request)



◆ We use **should/ought to** to give advice.
e.g. Young children **should/ought to** go to bed early.

You **should not/shouldn't** } spend so much
ought not to/oughtn't to } money on clothes.



◆ We use **shall** in questions a) when we offer to do something, e.g. **Shall I** carry your shopping for you? (Would you like me to carry your shopping for you?), b) when we make suggestions. e.g. **Shall we** visit your cousins tonight? and c) when we ask for suggestions. e.g. 'What time **shall I** call you?' 'Give me a call at six.'

◆ We use **will** in questions when we want to make a request. e.g. **Will you** phone the doctor, please?

3 Joan doesn't always do the right thing. What does her mother advise her to do? Use the prompts to make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. You **should** do your homework.

- She doesn't do her homework.
- She talks all the time.
- She never washes the dishes.
- She doesn't tidy her room.
- She eats lots of chocolate.
- She argues with her sisters.
- She doesn't put her clothes away.
- She never takes the dog for a walk.

4 Fill in the gaps with the question words from the list and **shall we**.

when, what, how, how much, who, where

- 1 'Where **shall we** go on Saturday night?'
'Let's go to a restaurant.'
- 2 '..... spend on a present for Jane?'
'£10.'
- 3 '..... pay?' 'In cash.'
- 4 '..... invite to the party?' 'Just our friends.'
- 5 '..... decorate the house?' 'This weekend.'
- 6 '..... do on your birthday?'
'We can have a party.'
- 7 '..... do on Monday?'
'Why don't we go swimming?'
- 8 '..... take the dog for a walk?'
'Let's take him to the beach.'

5 Mrs Patterson asks the nanny to do some things while she's gone. Use the prompts to make requests, as in the example.

e.g. Will you give the baby a bath?



• give the baby a bath



• take the rubbish out



• feed the baby



• water the plants



• put all the toys away



• iron the clothes

Functions of Modal Verbs

FUNCTION	MODAL VERBS
obligation/necessity	You must/have to study hard. <i>(You're obliged to ...)</i>
advice	You must/should/ought to see a doctor. <i>(I advise you to ...)</i>
prohibition	You mustn't talk in the library. <i>(You aren't allowed to...)</i>
lack of necessity	They needn't/don't have to call us tonight. <i>(It isn't necessary.)</i>
ability	Tony can run fast. (present) When he was young, he could climb trees. (general ability in the past) She was able to get into the house. (single action in the past)
permission	Can/Could/May I use your phone? (asking for permission) You can take my car tonight. (giving permission) You can't take photographs inside the museum. (refusing permission)
request	Can you lend me your pen, please? Could you open the door, please? Will you post this letter?
suggestion	We can/could watch a film tonight. Shall we eat out tonight? <i>(Why don't we eat/How about eating out tonight?)</i>
possibility	He may/might/could be ill. <i>(Perhaps; it is possible.)</i>
offer	Shall I carry the shopping for you? <i>(Would you like me to carry ...?)</i>
logical assumption	She must be at work. <i>(I'm sure she is ...)</i> She can't be at work. <i>(I'm sure she isn't ...)</i>

6 Rewrite the sentences using modal verbs, as in the example.

- It isn't necessary for her to wear a suit to the office.
She needn't/doesn't have to wear a suit to the office.
- You aren't allowed to take those books out of the library.
.....
- It is possible that Mark will be at home this evening.
.....
- Would you like me to make some sandwiches for you?
.....
- I advise you to leave early.
.....
- Emily managed to find a job after looking for six months.
.....
- I'm sure Paul isn't from Canada.
.....
- We are obliged to take exams every six months.
.....
- I'm sure the children aren't happy with your decision.
.....
- Perhaps we will go to Florida on holiday.
.....

7 Choose the correct answer.

- I ... **C** ... remember to go to the bank. I haven't got any money.
A don't have to B needn't C must
- I take your order, please?
A Mustn't B Must C May
- you ride a bicycle?
A Can B Should C May
- Steven read and write until he was seven years old.
A must B could C couldn't
- you make dinner tonight?
A Shall B Will C May
- Susan, you come outside and play with me?
A will B shall C may
- You go to bed late during the week.
A couldn't B shall C shouldn't
- You visit your grandparents more often.
A ought to B were able to C shall
- we go to the cinema at the weekend?
A Mustn't B May C Shall
- 'Where we meet?' 'At my place.'
A must B shall C ought to

- 11 Peter go to the dentist before his toothache gets worse.
A ought to B shall C can
- 12 You do the ironing. I'll do it instead.
A needn't B must C mustn't
- 13 You cross the road without looking first. It's dangerous.
A needn't B mustn't C must

8 Read what each person says and rewrite their comments using another modal verb.



- 1 Will you read louder, please?
2
3

- 4
5
6

9 Match the sentences in Column A with the responses in Column B.

Column A

- 1 Do I have to do the shopping today?
- 2 Can I ask you a question?
- 3 Will you buy me some stamps at the post office?
- 4 If you're tired, we could have a short break.
- 5 May I borrow your mobile phone, please?
- 6 Edward can't be in his office.

Column B

- a Certainly.
- b Yes, that would be nice.
- c No, you don't. I did it yesterday.
- d Yes, I agree. He must be at the bank.
- e Sure. How many do you want?
- f Of course. What do you want to know?

- 1 ...c... 2 3 4 5 6

10 Underline the correct item.

Dear Henry,

I'm writing to you because I need some advice. 1) Can/Shall you help me, please? My boss offered me a job in Italy and I 2) could/must make a decision about it soon. I've been thinking about it since last week but I 3) haven't been able to/wasn't able to decide! I'm a bit worried that I 4) shall/may not enjoy living in another country. I 5) might/ought to find it difficult to learn Italian. However, I 6) won't have to/mustn't stay there if I don't like it. What do you think? 7) Should/Will I move to Italy or 8) could/should I stay here? 9) Could/May you write to me and tell me what you think?

I hope to hear from you soon.

Best wishes,
Ronnie

11 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate modal verb. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

- 1 A: I ... *could*... roller-skate when I was young.
B: So could I. Those were the days.
- 2 A: Dad's car broke down yesterday.
B: he repair it?
A: No, he took it to the garage.
- 3 A: Those men look alike. They
be brothers.
B: Yes, they are.
- 4 A: You leave your toys on the floor.
B: Why?
A: You'll cause an accident.
- 5 A: Shall I do Grandma's shopping for her?
B: No, you..... She wants to do it herself.
- 6 A: You tidy your bedroom today.
B: Oh, do I ?
- 7 A: Where is Colin?
B: I'm not sure. He be in his office.
- 8 A: What we do at the weekend?
B: We go swimming.
- 9 A: My brother ride a motorbike.
B: Really? he drive a car, too?
- 10 A: I'm really tired.
B: You go to bed early tonight.
- 11 A: I help you, sir?
B: No thank you. I'm just looking around.

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 I advise you to look for another job.
should You **should look for** another job.
ought You **ought to look for** another job.
- 2 Perhaps Mary is at the library.
may Mary **may be at the** library.
- 3 Let's leave the party now.
shall **Shall we leave** the party now?
- 4 I'm sure Jack isn't married.
can't Jack **can't be** married.
- 5 I'm sure Peter has a lot of money.
must Peter **must have a lot of** money.

12 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 Perhaps Nick is at the office.
may Nick ... *may be at the*... office.
- 2 I don't think Mary is very happy at the moment.
can't Mary very happy at the moment.

- 3 I'm bored. Let's watch TV.
shall I'm bored. TV?
- 4 I'm sure those are Paula's sunglasses.
must Those Paula's sunglasses.
- 5 I advise you to stop eating fatty foods.
ought You fatty foods.
- 6 Perhaps the children are in the playground.
may The children playground.
- 7 I'm sure they come from Spain. They've got a Spanish accent.
must They
They've got a Spanish accent.

13 Read the situations and complete the sentences with an appropriate modal verb.

- 1 You are at school. Your teacher tells you to bring your homework with you tomorrow.
You must bring your homework with you tomorrow.
- 2 You have fallen over. Your arm hurts. Your friend thinks it might be broken. She advises you to go to hospital.
..... go to hospital.
- 3 Your friend is having a birthday party on Saturday. You want to go. Ask your parents for permission.
..... go to my friend's party on Saturday?
- 4 You are eating lunch with your family. You can't reach the salt. Make a request.
..... pass the salt, please?
- 5 Your mother asks you where your brother is. You think he is at the cinema with his friends.
..... be at the cinema with his friends.
- 6 Your parents are planning to go on holiday this summer. They can't decide where to go. You suggest going to America.
..... go to America.
- 7 You are at the beach with your mother. She is going to buy a drink. She asks you if you want anything. Ask for an ice-cream.
..... buy me an ice-cream, please?

14 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Might we visit Mary and Tony tonight?
- 2 I'm not sure where Ed is. He *mustn't* be at work.
- 3 Will I help you wash the dishes?
- 4 You *mustn't* get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
- 5 Martha had a bad cold but she *could* do all her work at the office.
- 6 You *shouldn't* go to the dentist if you have toothache.
- 7 Shall I borrow your pen, please?
- 8 I might climb trees when I was young.

Revision Box

15 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

A I went (1) ...*swimming*... (swim) last week. Even though it is only April, it was warm enough (2) (swim). I hope (3) (go) again next week if the weather is good.

B I also managed (1) (find) time to go to the cinema to see the new Brad Pitt film last week. The film is worth (2) (see) because it is very exciting.

16 Choose the correct answer.

Dear Melanie,

Hi! I'm writing 1) ...*B*... you some good news.

My father 2) for a new job for two months 3) he found one last week. It is in Carrfield and that means that we 4) move back. I'm very happy about this because I 5) see my old friends again. I was very sad 6) we left two years ago, but now I'm looking forward 7) back.

Well, I must go now. I hope 8) you very soon.

Best wishes,
Jenny

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1 A give | B to give | C giving |
| 2 A had looked | B was looking | C had been looking |
| 3 A until | B after | C while |
| 4 A should | B have to | C shall |
| 5 A have been able to | B will be able to | C was able to |
| 6 A when | B while | C as soon as |
| 7 A come | B to coming | C to come |
| 8 A see | B seeing | C to see |

ORAL Activity

A fire-fighter is visiting your school. He wants to tell the students what they should/shouldn't do if there is a fire. Look at the prompts below and say what his advice is.

e.g. *You should leave the classroom at once.*

- leave the classroom at once
- stay behind to collect your things
- follow your teacher's instructions
- use the lift
- run down the stairs
- go to a safe place
- panic



WRITING Activity

Look at the Oral Activity again and complete the leaflet that the fire-fighter gave the students, as in the example.

What to do in case of fire

You should leave the classroom at once.

.....

.....

.....

.....

What not to do in case of fire

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 13

The Passive



The Parthenon **was built** in the 5th century BC. It **is visited** by thousands of tourists every year.

We form the passive with the verb **to be** and the **past participle** of the main verb.

to be + past participle (pp)

◆ The passive verb forms are:

present simple: am/is/are + pp

The office **is cleaned** twice a week.

present continuous: am/is/are being + pp

The office **is being cleaned** now.

past simple: was/were + pp

The office **was cleaned** last week.

past continuous: was/were being + pp

The office **was being cleaned** when the boss arrived.

present perfect simple: have/has been + pp

The office **has not been cleaned** yet.

past perfect simple: had been + pp

The office **had been cleaned** by two o'clock.

future simple: will be + pp

The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.

◆ We form questions by putting the verb to be before the subject.

e.g. *Is your car being serviced?*

We form negations with the word not.

e.g. *The furniture has not been delivered yet.*

◆ We form the passive of infinitives like this:

to be + past participle

e.g. *He wants to be told the truth.*

◆ We form the passive of modal verbs like this:

modal verb + be + past participle

e.g. *The roof of the house must be repaired.*

1

Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences using the present simple passive, as in the example.

1 Volkswagen cars are made in Germany.



1 Volkswagen cars/
make/Germany



2 a lot of rice/
eat/India



3 snails/eat/
France



4 Coca Cola/
produce/the
USA



5 coffee/grow/
Brazil



6 beer/produce/
Germany

2

Match Column A with Column B to make correct sentences using the past simple passive. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Who was "Oliver Twist" written by?*
SB: *It was written by Charles Dickens.*

Column A	Column B
1 'Oliver Twist' (write)	a Leonardo da Vinci
2 The 'Mona Lisa' (paint)	b Steven Spielberg
3 The Eiffel Tower (build)	c Alexander the Great
4 'Jurassic Park' (direct)	d Charles Dickens
5 'Carmen' (compose)	e Georges Bizet
6 Alexandria (found)	f Gustave Eiffel
7 America (discover)	g Christopher Columbus
8 The telephone (invent)	h Alexander Graham Bell

3

Mrs Edison is a businesswoman. She was away on a business trip but now she is back. She wants to know what has been done while she was away. Use the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Have they delivered my new desk?*
SB: *No, it hasn't been delivered yet.*
SA: *Have you posted the invitations?*
SB: *Yes, they have already been posted.*

- they / deliver / my new desk? (No)
- you / post / the invitations? (Yes)
- they / repair / the photocopier? (Yes)
- you / type / last month's reports? (No)
- you / place / advertisement in the newspaper? (No)
- you / pay / the bills? (Yes)

4 Emma Doyle has got three children. Yesterday she had to go out. What had been done by the children by the time she got home? Look at the prompts and make sentences using the past perfect passive, as in the example.

e.g. *The beds had been made.*
The dishes had not been washed.

a	beds / make	✓	e	cat / feed	✗
b	dishes / wash	✗	f	dinner / cook	✗
c	plants / water	✓	g	rubbish / take out	✓
d	carpet / Hoover	✓	h	windows / clean	✗

5 Fill in the gaps with the correct passive tense of the verbs in brackets.

- A: These flowers are great.
B: They ... *were sent* ... (send) to me yesterday by one of my fans.
- A: Have you ever appeared on TV?
B: Actually, I (recently/ask) to take part in a show.
- A: When will I have my car?
B: It (deliver) to your house the day after tomorrow.
- A: So, when did they tell you about the robbery?
B: I (inform) by the police as soon as they found out.
- A: Why can't we go over the bridge?
B: Because it (repair) at the moment.
- A: I'm tired.
B: So am I. But these reports must (type) before we leave.
- A: Who looks after your baby when you're at work?
B: Well, he (look after) by my mother.
- A: Those pictures are beautiful.
B: They (paint) by my father while he was on holiday last summer.
- A: Who does the washing-up in your house?
B: The dishes (wash) by my brother and then they (dry) by my sister.
- A: Why can't I use your car?
B: Because it (service) at the moment. You can take Mum's car if you want.
- A: Did you post the letters?
B: No, they (already/post) by the time I came in.
- A: What will happen to the criminals?
B: They (punish) for their crimes.
- A: That's a very pretty tablecloth.
B: It (give) to me last year for my birthday.
- A: Have you moved house yet?
B: Yes. The last boxes (just/move).
- A: Have you heard about Jack?
B: Yes, he (promote) to senior manager.

Use

We use the passive when we want to show that the action of the verb is more important than the person who carries out the action.



The missing climber **was found** yesterday. (The action (was found) is more important than the person who found the climber.)

- ◆ The **agent** (the person who carries out the action) is introduced with the preposition **by** and is mentioned only when the identity of the agent is important or needs to be stated.

e.g. *Australia was discovered by Captain Cook.*
(by Captain Cook - The identity of the agent is important.)

- ◆ The agent is not mentioned when:

a) it is unknown.



Jim's car **was stolen** last night. (We don't know who stole Jim's car.)

b) it is unimportant.



Champagne **is made** in France. (The agent is unimportant.)

c) it is obvious from the context.



The bank robbers **are being chased**. (It is obvious that the police are chasing them.)

Turning the active into the passive

To turn a sentence from the active into the passive:

- a) The **object** of the active sentence becomes the **subject** in the passive sentence.
- b) The active verb changes into a passive form.
- c) The **subject** of the active sentence becomes the **agent**.

	subject	verb	object
active	Kim	baked	a cake.

	subject	verb	agent
passive	A cake	was baked	by Kim.

Study the following table:

	active	passive
present simple	She types the letters.	The letters are typed .
present continuous	She is typing the letters.	The letters are being typed .
past simple	She typed the letters.	The letters were typed .
past continuous	She was typing the letters .	The letters were being typed .
present perfect simple	She has typed the letters.	The letters have been typed .
past perfect simple	She had typed the letters.	The letters had been typed .
future simple	She will type the letters.	The letters will be typed .
infinitive	She has to type the letters.	The letters have to be typed .
modals (modal + be + pp)	She may type the letters.	The letters may be typed .

- ◆ Only the verbs that take an object can be turned into the passive. e.g. *Susan cleans the silver. The silver is cleaned by Susan. But: It is snowing today. (This sentence cannot be turned into the passive because the verb does not take an object.)*
- ◆ When the subject of the active sentence is one of the following words: **people, one, someone/somebody, they, he, etc.**, the agent is often omitted in the passive sentence. e.g. *People watch TV all over the world. TV is watched all over the world (by people).*
- ◆ **Object pronouns** (me, you, him, etc.) become **subject pronouns** (I, you, he, etc.) in the passive. e.g. *He gave this book to me. I was given this book.*
- ◆ When the verb of the active sentence is followed by a preposition, the preposition is kept in the passive sentence as well. e.g. *Burglars broke into our house last night. Our house was broken into last night.*

6

Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 The pop star sang the song.
<i>The song was sung by the pop star.</i> 2 The chef hasn't made dinner.
..... 3 An explorer has found a dinosaur egg.
..... 4 Mrs Gates will look after the baby.
..... 5 They won't take him home after the party.
..... | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6 Someone left the front door open.
..... 7 Jenny didn't break the window.
..... 8 Someone is using the computer.
..... 9 His brother taught him to drive.
..... 10 Many people speak English.
..... 11 The doctor had already told him to go on a diet.
..... 12 The author is writing a new book.
..... |
|--|---|

7 Turn the following questions into the passive.

- 1 Do they make bread in this factory?
Is bread made in this factory?
- 2 Will Susan decorate the bedroom tomorrow?
.....
- 3 Did they find the ring in the garden?
.....
- 4 Is Tom drawing the picture?
.....
- 5 Has Simon sent the invitations yet?
.....
- 6 Had Paul repaired the door before he left for work?
.....

Note:
When we want to find out who or what did something, then the passive is formed as follows: **Who/What ... by?**
e.g. *Who was America discovered by?*

8 Write questions in the passive to which the words in bold are the answers, as in the examples.

- 1 **Captain Cook** discovered Australia.
Who was Australia discovered by?
- 2 **A dog** was chasing Paul.
What was Paul being chased by?
- 3 **Simon** is going to organise the party.
.....
- 4 **A bee** stung him.
.....
- 5 **Fiona** cooked this delicious turkey.
.....
- 6 **An international company** publishes these books.
.....
- 7 **A bomb** killed the soldier.
.....

With verbs which take two objects, such as **ask, bring, tell, send, show, teach, promise, offer, give, pay, lend, etc.**, we can form the passive in two ways.
Active: *Someone sent Helen some flowers.*
Passive: a) *Helen was sent some flowers.*
 b) *Some flowers were sent to Helen.*
The first way is used more often because we are more interested in the person (Helen) than the thing (some flowers).

9 Rewrite the sentences in the passive in both ways, as in the example.

- 1 His father gave Billy a new bicycle.
a) Billy was given a new bicycle by his father.
b) A new bicycle was given to Billy by his father.
- 2 Fred has offered Mary a watch.
a)
b)
- 3 Lisa is sending Tim an invitation.
a)
b)
- 4 She brought me some oranges.
a)
b)
- 5 Sonia is going to lend me some money.
a)
b)
- 6 Jack will show me the new car.
a)
b)
- 7 They paid him a lot of money for the job.
a)
b)

10 Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- 1 They will not deliver the new sofa on Friday.
The new sofa will not be delivered on Friday.
- 2 You can use this saucepan for cooking spaghetti.
.....
- 3 I have to finish my homework tonight.
.....
- 4 You must tidy your bedroom.
.....
- 5 You ought to put these clothes away.
.....
- 6 The boss gave the secretary some letters to type.
.....
- 7 We should eat this cake immediately.
.....
- 8 Sally sent Peter a birthday card.
.....
- 9 You must take the dog for a walk.
.....
- 10 The cat is not chasing the mouse.
.....
- 11 Do they produce oil in Spain?
.....
- 12 Did a dog bite him?
.....
- 13 Edward has not recorded a new song.
.....

UNIT 13

The Passive

11 Rewrite the following passage in the passive.

Somebody sent me a bunch of flowers. The man from the flower shop delivered them to my house. He told me that they were a present. A young man had ordered them. He had put no card in the flowers. I still don't know who sent them.



.....

12 Rewrite the following passage in the passive.

Someone started a fire in the Courtney National Park early yesterday morning. They had used a match and some petrol to start the fire. The fire had burnt a lot of trees before someone called the fire brigade. The police have arrested a man. They are still questioning him.



.....

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 A famous artist will paint his portrait.
be His portrait **will be painted by** a famous artist.
- 2 You must post these letters as soon as possible.
must These letters **must be posted** as soon as possible.
- 3 Somebody stole my wallet yesterday.
was My wallet **was stolen** yesterday.

13 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 They built the house last year.
was The house ...*was built*... last year.
- 2 They are planting trees in the garden.
being Trees in the garden.
- 3 The dog was chasing the cat around the house.
was The cat around the house by the dog.
- 4 They haven't cleaned the floor yet.
been The floor yet.
- 5 They had eaten all the food by the time I got there.
had All the food by the time I got there.
- 6 You must finish the project by Wednesday afternoon.
be The project by Wednesday afternoon.
- 7 Mr Brown sent us a wedding invitation.
was A wedding invitation to us by Mr Brown.
- 8 They should inform the citizens as soon as possible.
should The citizens as soon as possible.

14 Fill in the active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.



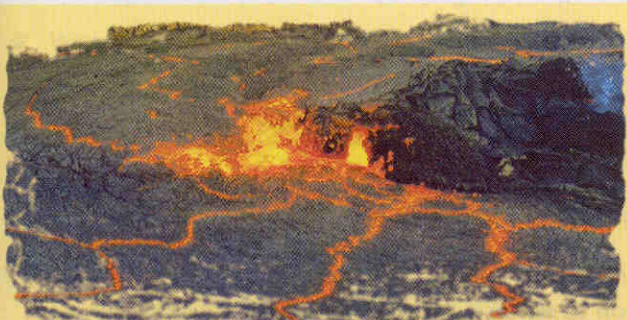
Mrs Wilson is a rich young lady. She (1) *lives*... (live) in a big house on the outskirts of the city with her husband and her two dogs. Every day, Mrs Wilson (2) (take) into the city centre. Her car (3) (drive) by her chauffeur. She then (4) (go) shopping in her favourite shops. Her bags (5) (carry) by the chauffeur. Mrs Wilson (6) (buy) lots of things every week. She (7) (need) lots of clothes because she goes to lots of parties. In fact, this week she (8) (invite) to a big birthday party which (9) (hold) in a large mansion in the country. All of her friends will be there, so Mrs Wilson (10) (look forward) to it very much.

15 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 The dishes has been washed.
- 2 The letters are being opened every morning in the office.
- 3 Your homework must finished by Monday.
- 4 The woman seen taking the children to school.
- 5 Mike has been tell about the new job.
- 6 The cars stole from the car park.
- 7 The house is been decorated recently.
- 8 The centre will visit by the King next month.

Revision Box

16 Choose the correct answer.



Pompeii is an ancient town in Italy (1) ...C... was destroyed when a volcano (2) in 79 AD. The lava and ash from the eruption of Mount Vesuvius buried the town along with everything and everyone in it. Most of the site (3) studied by archaeologists (4) have uncovered many objects among the ruins. The town is now a popular tourist attraction and is visited (5) thousands of people each year. They (6) walk along the streets which (7) once a part of the busy market town and (8) now an important part of history.

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 A where | B who | C which |
| 2 A erupted | B has erupted | C had erupted |
| 3 A has been | B was being | C had been |
| 4 A whose | B they | C who |
| 5 A by | B from | C with |
| 6 A could | B can | C are able |
| 7 A was | B have been | C were |
| 8 A were | B are | C has been |

ORAL Activity

Max Hunter has inherited an old factory and he has decided to turn it into a club. Look at the pictures and the notes below, then make sentences in the passive, as in the example.

the walls/painted, the windows/replaced, garden lights/put in, the roof/repared, trees/planted, the sign/put up, the door/fixed

e.g. *The walls have been painted.*



WRITING Activity

Imagine you are Max Hunter. Look at your notes from the Oral Activity and write a letter to your friend telling him about the changes to the factory.

Dear Harry,

I have some exciting news. I've recently inherited an old factory and I've decided to turn it into a club.

So far, the walls have been painted

.....

UNIT 14

Reported Speech

Diana had a meeting yesterday.



Today, Diana met Alison. Alison asked her what they had said. Diana told her that they would use her plans.



- ◆ **Direct Speech** is the exact words someone said. We use quotation marks (' ') in direct speech.
e.g. 'I'm very tired,' Mary said.
- ◆ **Reported Speech** is the exact meaning of what someone said, but not the exact words. We do not use quotation marks in reported speech. We can either use the word **that** after the introductory verb or we can omit it. e.g. Mary said (that) she was very tired.

Say - Tell

We use the verb **say**:

- ◆ both in direct and reported speech **without** the preposition **to** when it is not followed by the person being spoken to.
e.g. Jerry **said**, 'I need some money.' Jerry **said** (that) he needed some money.
- ◆ both in direct and reported speech **with** the preposition **to** when it is followed by the person being spoken to.
e.g. Jerry **said to me**, 'I need some money.' Jerry **said to me** (that) he needed some money.
- ◆ in expressions such as: say good morning/afternoon, etc., say something, say one's prayers, say so, etc.

We use the verb **tell** without the preposition **to**:

- ◆ both in direct and reported speech when it is followed by the person we are talking to.
e.g. Jerry **told me**, 'I need some money.' Jerry **told me** (that) he needed some money. (NOT: ~~Jerry told to me that he...~~)
- ◆ in expressions such as: tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a secret, tell a story, tell the time, tell the difference, tell sb one's name, tell sb the way, tell one from another, etc.

1

Fill in the gaps with say or tell in the correct tense.

A Richard (1) ...*told*... Sarah that he was having a party on Saturday night. He (2) that it would start early but it would finish quite late. He (3) her to bring her sister along as well. Sarah (4) she was looking forward to going. Richard (5) her he would probably call again on Friday to (6) her the way to his house.

B 'What shall we do?' asked Carrie. 'It's raining outside, so let's watch television,' I (1) I turned on the television and Carrie (2) to me, 'Look! That's my favourite programme. Let's watch it.' 'To (3) you the truth, I don't like it,' I (4)

C 'Good morning, Mr Pearson,' (1) Bella. 'Good morning, Bella,' he replied. 'I've got lots of letters for you to type today,' he (2) to her. 'Alright,' Bella (3) 'I'll type them after I finish writing this report for you.'

Reported Statements



Yesterday, the Johnsons and the Smiths had a barbecue together. What did Laura say to Jim? What did Ed say to Celia?

Laura told Jim that the hot dogs **were** delicious and that he **was** a great cook. Ed told Celia that he **was having** a great time and that he really **liked** their new house.

- ◆ When we report statements (that is, a positive or negative sentence), we use the verbs 'say' or 'tell' to introduce the statement. Pronouns and possessive adjectives change according to the meaning.

e.g. Sophie said, 'I bought a new camera yesterday.'

Sophie said (that) **she** had bought a new camera the day before.

- ◆ When the introductory verb is in the past simple, the verb tenses change as follows:

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
Present Simple 'I want to find a better job,' he said.	Past Simple He said he wanted to find a better job.
Present Continuous 'They're playing table tennis,' he said.	Past Continuous He said they were playing table tennis.
Present Perfect 'I've ordered a new fridge,' she said.	Past Perfect She said she had ordered a new fridge.
Past Simple 'Jack left the country,' they said.	Past Perfect They said Jack had left the country.
Future (will) 'I'll send you a letter,' he said.	Conditional (would) He said he would send me a letter.

- ◆ Certain words and time expressions change as follows:

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
tonight, today, this week/month/year, etc.	that night, that day, that week/month/year, etc.
now	then, at that time, at once, immediately
yesterday, last night/week/month/year, etc.	the day before/the previous day, the previous night/week/month/year, etc., the night/week/month/year, etc. before
tomorrow, next week/month/year, etc.	the day after/the following /next day, the next/following week/month/year, etc.
two days/months/years, etc. ago	two days/months/years etc. before
this, these	that, those/the/some
here	there
come	go

- ◆ When the introductory verb is in the present, future or present perfect simple or when the sentence expresses something which is always true (general truth), there are no changes in the verb tenses in reported speech.

Direct speech: She says, 'I don't like him.'
Reported speech: She **says** (that) she **doesn't like** him. | 'It **is** cold in the Arctic,' said the teacher.
 The teacher said (that) it **is** cold in the Arctic.

- ◆ The past continuous, past perfect simple and past perfect continuous do not change in reported speech.

Direct speech: 'I **was watching** TV while she **was cooking**,' he said.
Reported speech: He said (that) he **was watching** TV while she **was cooking**.

- ◆ Certain modal verbs do not change in reported speech. These are **would, could, might, should** and **ought to**.

Direct speech: 'I **could** run fast when I was young,' Tom said.
Reported speech: Tom said (that) he **could** run fast when he was young.

2 Fill in the gaps with the correct pronouns or possessive adjectives.

- Mary said, 'I want to go out with my friends.'
 Mary said (that) ...*she*... wanted to go out with ...*her*... friends.
- Tom said, 'I have lost my keys.'
 Tom said (that) had lost keys.
- Bob and Marie said, 'We are taking our dog for a walk.'
 Bob and Marie said (that) were taking dog for a walk.
- Andrew said, 'My sister is coming to visit me next week.'
 Andrew said (that) sister was going to visit the following week.
- Mr Jones said, 'I need to buy a present for my wife.'
 Mr Jones said (that) needed to buy a present for wife.
- Father said, 'I want you to wash my car for me.'
 Father said (that) wanted to wash car for

3 Turn from direct into reported speech.

- 'I can't find my bag,' she said.
She said (that) she couldn't find her bag.
- 'They are working in the garden,' he said.

- 'We got married six months ago,' she said to us.

- 'I'll go shopping tomorrow,' he said.

- 'I bought a new car last week,' he said.

- 'We aren't doing anything next week,' they said.

- 'I can't go out tonight,' she said to me.

- 'I forgot to pay the bill,' he said.

- 'We've brought you a present,' she said to me.

- 'I'll phone you tomorrow,' she said to Peter.

4 In which of the following sentences do the tenses not change? Why? Then, turn the following statements from direct into reported speech.

- 'I'll paint the house next week,' he says.
Tenses do not change because the introductory verb is in the present simple. He says (that) he will paint the house.
- 'I've put the washing in the washing-machine,' Rose said.

- 'A giraffe is bigger than a mouse,' he said.

- 'We haven't seen Tom for two weeks,' she said.

- 'I haven't phoned my uncle since last month,' she says.

- 'Birds can fly,' the student said.

- 'He's studying for an exam now,' she said.

- 'Leaves fall from the trees in autumn,' he said.

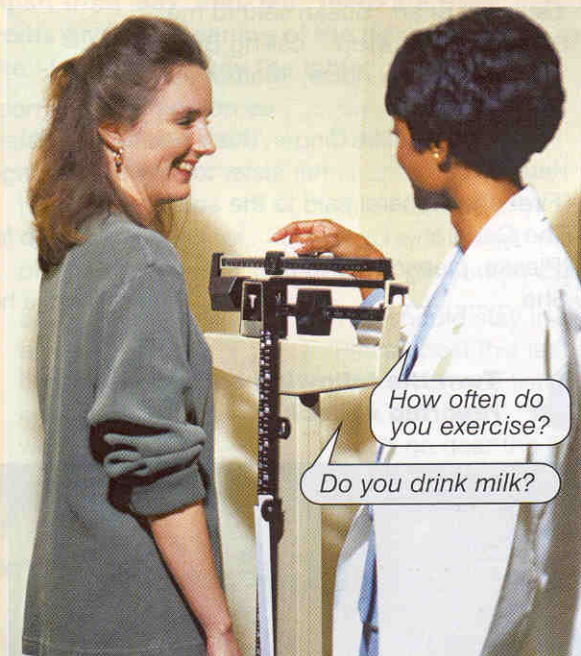
- 'We visited the circus last weekend,' they said.

- 'She dropped the vase on the floor,' Tony said.

- 'He took the money to the bank this morning,' she said.

- 'The Earth moves round the sun,' the teacher said.

Reported Questions



Yesterday, Mary went to the doctor's.
The doctor **asked** Mary **how often** she **exercised**.
She also asked her **if/whether** she **drank** milk.

◆ We introduce reported questions with **ask** or **want to know**.

In reported questions, the verb is in the affirmative and the question mark is omitted. Verb tenses, pronouns and time expressions change as in statements.

e.g. **'Are you working tomorrow morning?'** Paul asked her.

Paul asked her if **she was working** the next morning.

◆ When the direct question begins with a **question word** (who, where, how, when, why, what, etc.), then the reported question begins with the same question word.

e.g. **'Why are you late?'** Mother asked me.

Mother asked me **why** I was late.

◆ When the direct question begins with an **auxiliary** (is, do, have, etc.) or a **modal verb** (can, may, etc.), then the reported question begins with **if** or **whether**.

e.g. **'Can you speak French?'** they asked me.

They asked me **if/whether** I could speak French.

5 Turn the questions from direct into reported speech.

- 1 'How old are you?' he asked me.
He asked me how old I was.
- 2 'When will you call me?' she asked George.
.....
- 3 She asked, 'Can you play the piano?'
.....
- 4 He asked, 'Who's there?'
.....
- 5 'Do you like fish?' she asked Jonathan.
.....
- 6 'What have you done today?' Mother asked.
.....
- 7 Jim asked, 'Did you go to work yesterday?'
.....
- 8 'How did you get here?' he asked.
.....
- 9 'Have you seen my blue jacket anywhere?' she asked.
.....
- 10 He asked, 'Will you take me to work tomorrow?'
.....
- 11 She asked, 'Where have you been?'
.....
- 12 She asked, 'Will they visit us in the summer?'
.....

6 There has been a fire in a busy area of your town. Read the reporter's questions and turn them into reported speech.



- 1 'How did the fire start?'
The reporter asked *how the fire had started*.
- 2 'Who called the fire brigade?'
The reporter wanted to know
- 3 'Did you ask people to leave the building?'
The reporter asked
- 4 'Was anybody injured?'
The reporter wanted to know
- 5 'How many fire-fighters are here now?'
The reporter asked
- 6 'Have any of the houses been damaged?'
The reporter wanted to know

Reported Commands/Requests/Suggestions

Let's make some cards.
Ruth, sit down please.
Be careful with the glue.
Don't make a mess.



The teacher **suggested making** some cards.
She **asked Ruth to sit down**.
She **told the children to be careful with the glue**.
She also **told them not to make a mess**.

◆ To report **commands or instructions** we use the verbs **order** or **tell + sb + (not) to - infinitive**.

e.g. 'Give me your money!' he said to me.
He **ordered me to give him my money**.
'Don't shoot!' he said to them.
He **ordered them not to shoot**.
'Cut the paper into two pieces,' she said to me.
She **told me to cut the paper into two pieces**.

◆ To report **requests**, we use the verbs **ask** or **beg + sb + (not) to - infinitive**. The sentence in direct speech usually contains the word 'please'.

e.g. 'Listen to me, please,' Laura said to Bob.
Laura **asked Bob to listen to her**.
'Please, please don't tell anyone I'm here,' she said to him.
She **begged him not to tell anyone (that) she was there**.

◆ To report **suggestions**, we use the verb **suggest + -ing form**.

e.g. 'Let's play a game,' Father said to us.
'We can/could play a game,' Father said to us.
'Shall we play a game?' Father said to us.
'How about playing a game?' Father said to us.

Father **suggested playing** a game.

7

Fill in the gaps with the verbs in the list in the correct form.

order, tell, ask, beg, suggest

- 'Let's call Brian,' Susan said to me.
Susan ... **suggested** ... calling Brian.
- 'Don't make any noise,' Mother said to us.
Mother us not to make any noise.
- 'Please stay a little longer,' Kate said to her sister.
Kate her sister to stay a little longer.
- 'Fire!' the General said to the soldiers.
The General the soldiers to fire.
- 'Please, please forgive me,' she said to him.
She him to forgive her.

8

Turn the following sentences into reported speech.



- Be careful of the glass! *The fire-fighter told them to be careful of the glass.*
- Stand back!
- Bring the light nearer!
- Pass me an axe!
- Go to the other side of the plane!

9

Turn from direct into reported speech.

- Mary said to me, 'Come with me, please.'
Mary asked me to go with her.
- The shop assistant said to the child, 'Don't touch anything.'
.....
- The secretary said to me, 'Wait here, please.'
.....
- She said, 'Shall we go swimming?'
.....
- The park keeper said to them, 'Don't walk on the grass.'
.....
- He said to them, 'Don't stay out late tonight.'
.....
- Annie said to Barry, 'Please, please help me.'
.....

Introductory Verbs

Apart from 'say' and 'tell', there are other introductory verbs which can be used in reported speech. These verbs give the meaning of the direct sentence more accurately and are followed by either the to - infinitive or the '-ing form'. Study the table:

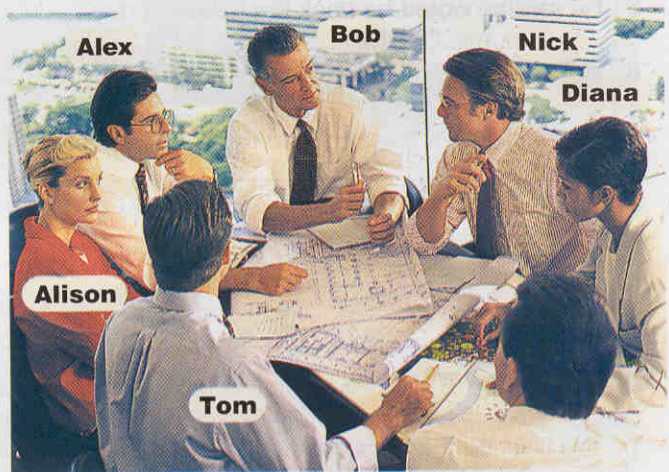
Introductory Verb	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
promise refuse } + to - inf offer	'I'll be home early.' 'No, I won't wash the dishes.' 'Can I get you an aspirin?'	He promised to be home early. He refused to wash the dishes. He offered to get me an aspirin.
advise ask } + sb + to - inf beg order warn	'You should stay in bed.' 'Please post this letter.' 'Please, please listen to me.' 'Don't move!' 'Don't go near the fire.'	He advised me to stay in bed. He asked me to post the letter. He begged her to listen to him. He ordered me not to move . He warned me not to go near the fire.
suggest + -ing form	'Let's have some tea.' 'Shall we go to Helen's party?'	He suggested having some tea. He suggested going to Helen's party.

10 Choose an introductory verb and turn the following from direct into reported speech.

advised, asked, ordered, warned, promised, begged, offered, refused, suggested

- 'I think you should eat more vegetables,' my mother said to me.
My mother advised me to eat more vegetables.
- 'Please get me a glass of water,' he said to Jill.
.....
- 'No, I won't help you,' she said to Jim.
.....
- 'I'll buy you something nice for your birthday,' her mother said to her.
.....
- 'Don't play near the road because it's dangerous,' he said to us.
.....
- 'Would you like me to do the shopping?' she said.
.....
- 'Please, please don't leave me alone in the dark,' she said to her parents.
.....
- 'How about going to the cinema tonight?' he said.
.....
- 'Go to bed! ... Now!' his father said to him.
.....
- 'Shall we watch a video?' they said.
.....

11 The people in the picture had a meeting yesterday in which they discussed some business matters. Read their comments and turn them into reported speech.



- Tom: 'We should advertise on TV.'
Tom suggested advertising on TV.
- Alison: 'I'll help you organise the meeting.'
.....
- Alex: 'I can give you copies of the plan.'
.....
- Bob: 'Let's do some research on the subject.'
.....
- Nick: 'I'll give you all the details next week.'
.....
- Diana: 'Don't decide until you know the cost.'
.....

To turn a sentence from reported into direct speech, we follow the same steps as we do when we turn a sentence from direct into reported speech (see page 93), but in reverse order. We also:

- put the sentence in quotation marks.
- mention the speaker before or after the direct speech.
- put commas before or after the direct speech.
- begin the direct speech with a capital letter.
- put a question mark and not a comma if the direct speech is a question and the person being spoken to comes after it.

reported speech: Jack told me that he was leaving the next day.

direct speech: Jack said to me, 'I'm leaving tomorrow.' or 'I'm leaving tomorrow,' Jack said to me.

reported speech: The boss asked me if I enjoyed my work.

direct speech: 'Do you enjoy your work?' the boss asked me. or
The boss asked me, 'Do you enjoy your work?'

12

Turn the following sentences from reported into direct speech.

- 1 Trevor asked me if I had posted the letter.
'Did you post the letter?' Trevor asked me.
- 2 Sarah told me she was looking for a new job.
.....
- 3 Brian wanted to know what time the train to Leeds left.
.....
- 4 She said that she didn't like jogging.
.....
- 5 He said he would be back the following day.
.....
- 6 He asked how much my new car had cost.
.....
- 7 I asked Marie if she could do the shopping for me.
.....
- 8 Jill asked Roy to close the window.
.....

13

Turn from direct into reported speech or vice versa.

- 1 'I've finished the housework,' she said.
She said (that) she had finished the housework.
- 2 'Why did you do that?' he asked her.
.....
- 3 Susie told her mother that *Titanic* was the best film she had ever seen.
.....
- 4 He told them to put the rubbish in the bin.
.....
- 5 'Please answer the telephone,' he said to her.
.....
- 6 Alex said that they were going to Hawaii for their honeymoon.
.....

- 7 'Are you going out on Saturday night?' Ben asked me.
.....
- 8 Adam said that he had never ridden a horse before.
.....
- 9 'We'll go to the circus tomorrow,' said Mother.
.....
- 10 Mr Carter told them to pick up the paper from the floor.
.....
- 11 Julia begged her parents to let her go to the party.
.....
- 12 Greg said, 'Let's have a party on my birthday.'
.....

14

Turn the underlined sentences from reported into direct speech.



I met an old friend yesterday. I hadn't seen her for two years. I asked what she had been doing. We decided to go for a drink. We sat in a café for three hours. We talked about many different things. She asked me to give her my phone number and she wrote it down. When we left the café, I told her to call me very soon.

'What have you been doing?' I asked her.
.....
.....

15 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 He asked me where was the post office.
- 2 She suggested to visit the zoo.
- 3 Mother said, 'You must always say the truth.'
- 4 The doctor told me to not exercise a lot.
- 5 My parents offered giving me a lift to the railway station.
- 6 Our teacher said to us that the test was quite easy.
- 7 She asked how could she contact me.
- 8 He said that Kate had left the last month.
- 9 The old man told good night and went to bed.
- 10 Jenny said me, 'I hate Maths.'

Revision Box

16 Underline the correct word(s).

- 1 A: Where are you going/do you go?
B: To work.
- 2 A: **Did you do/Have you done** your homework yet?
B: Yes. I **was doing/did** it last night.
- 3 A: Did you paint the house?
B: Yes. I did it all by **me/myself**.
- 4 A: Can you get the sugar from the shelf?
B: No, I'm not tall **too/enough** to reach it.
- 5 A: Do you still play tennis?
B: No, I **used to/didn't use to** play every week, but I don't any more.
- 6 A: Do I have to go to the shops today?
B: No, you **needn't/mustn't**. I'll go instead.
- 7 A: Why are your clothes all wet?
B: I **was washing/have been washing** the dog!
- 8 A: Have you read this book?
B: Of course. It **is written/was written** by my aunt!
- 9 A: Who's that woman over there?
B: It's the woman **whose/who's** son is in my class at school.
- 10 A: **Shall/Must** we go out tonight?
B: Yes. Let's go to the cinema.
A: Okay. I **have to/will** meet you there at 8 o'clock.
- 11 A: I need some paper.
B: There is some in the drawer **who/which** is on your right.
- 12 A: Nicola's hair is short now.
B: Really? It **used to/didn't use to** be really long.

ORAL Activity

Tim Stevens, the famous actor, gave a press conference yesterday. Lucy Morton, a young reporter, attended the conference. Read what Tim Stevens said. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: *What did Tim Stevens say?*

SB: *He said that he was very happy to be in our country.*

SA: *What else did he say?*

1 I'm very happy to be in your country.

2 I have already been to Venice and Florence.

3 I went to France two months ago.

4 I starred in a film called 'L'amour'.

5 I'll return with my wife in the summer.

WRITING Activity

Lucy is writing an article about Tim Stevens for the magazine she works for. Complete the article using the information from the Oral Activity.

FAMOUS ACTOR VISITS OUR COUNTRY

Tim Stevens, who I'm sure all of you know, was here for a short visit. I was lucky enough to attend the press conference he gave yesterday. This is what Mr Stevens told the reporters. He said that he was very happy to be in our country. He also said

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 15

Conditionals - Wishes

Conditionals

- There are three types of **conditionals**. Each type consists of two parts: the **if - clause** (hypothesis), which begins with the word **if**, and the **main clause**, which shows the result of the hypothesis.

if - clause

(hypothesis)

If you are late,

main clause

(result)

you will miss the bus.

- When the if-clause comes before the main clause, they are separated with a comma. When the main clause comes before the if-clause, then they are not separated with a comma.
e.g. *If Peter has time, he will come to visit us.*
Peter will come to visit us if he has time.

Type 1 Conditionals



If Robert studies hard, he will pass his exams.



Water turns into ice if the temperature falls below 0°C.



If you don't understand, look at the example.



If you go to New York, you can see the Statue of Liberty.

- Type 1 conditionals** express a **real** or **very probable** situation in the **present** or **future**. They are formed as follows:

If - clause	Main clause
If + present simple	→ future simple → present simple → imperative → can/must/may, etc. + + bare infinitive

- We can use **unless** instead of **if...not** in the if - clause. The verb is always in the affirmative after **unless**.
e.g. *If you don't hurry, we'll be late for school.*
Unless you hurry, we'll be late for school.
(NOT: ~~Unless you don't hurry ...~~)



Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *If you go to London, you can see Big Ben.*

1  London/ Big Ben	2  Rome/the Colosseum	3  New York/the Empire State Building
4  Paris/the Eiffel Tower	5  Egypt/the Pyramids	6  Sydney/the Sydney Opera House
7  Venice/some gondolas	8  Hawaii/some palm trees	

2 Match column A with column B in order to make correct type 1 conditional sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *If you are tired, go to bed.*

Column A	Column B
1 tired	a make a sandwich
2 hungry	b get something to drink
3 bored	c go to bed
4 thirsty	d take one of these pills
5 seasick	e read a good book

3 Fill in unless or if.

- We won't go on holiday ...*unless*... we can take our dog with us.
- we don't buy it now, we'll have to get it later.
- you go to bed late, you'll be tired in the morning.
- I can't finish my homework you help me.
- We'll have a picnic on Saturday the weather is bad.
- You'll catch a cold you wear your coat.
- I'll open the window I get too hot.

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Add a comma where necessary.

- If you ...*have*... (have) toothache, go to the dentist.
- If Peter (do) lots of exercise he'll be fit and healthy.
- Please call me if you (need) any help.
- Sarah (be) angry if we don't go to her party?
- Cathy will be able to go on holiday if she (save) enough money.
- Unless it (rain) we'll go for a walk.
- If you (work) hard you may be promoted.
- you (give) me a call if you have time tomorrow?
- If you don't do your homework I (not/let) you watch TV.
- Mary won't go to Australia unless I (pay) for her tickets.
- If he (arrive) on time we'll have dinner before we go out.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A: I'd like a cup of coffee.
B: Well, if you ...*hold*... (hold) the baby for five minutes, I (make) it for you.
- A: I must go to the bank.
B: If you (leave) now, you (get) there before it closes.
- A: I can't do everything myself!
B: Well, if you (wash) the dishes, I (cook) the meal.
- A: Are you going on holiday this year?
B: Yes, I (go) to Spain for two weeks if I (have) some time off work.
- A: I want to cook something special tonight.
B: Great, if I (finish) work early, I (give) you a hand.
- A: Could I have a chocolate biscuit, please?
B: Yes, if you (look) in the cupboard, you (find) some cakes as well.

6 Rewrite the sentences, as in the examples.

- If Harry doesn't phone, we'll leave without him.
Unless Harry phones, we'll leave without him.
- Unless Sheila returns the money she owes me, I won't be able to pay my rent.
If Sheila doesn't return the money she owes me, I won't be able to pay my rent.
- Sarah will be disappointed if you don't send her a birthday card.
.....
- Maria won't go to the theatre if Peter doesn't go with her.
.....
- If you don't pay the electricity bill, it will be cut off.
.....
- Unless Kate comes home soon, her parents will call the police.
.....
- If the children don't behave themselves, they won't go to the zoo.
.....
- Unless my mother offers to help me, I won't have time to make all the preparations.
.....
- Unless you tidy your room, I won't take you to the party.
.....
- If Dennis doesn't write soon, I will be very upset.
.....

Type 2 Conditionals



If I had a lot of money, I would buy a big house and I'd go on a cruise round the world.

◆ **Type 2 conditionals** express an **imaginary** or **improbable** situation which is unlikely to happen in the **present** or **future**. They are formed as follows:

If - clause	Main clause
If + past simple	would/could/might + bare infinitive

e.g. **If I had** the time, I **would take up** a sport. (I don't have the time now, so it is unlikely that I will take up a sport. - improbable situation)

- ◆ We can use **were** instead of **was** for all persons.
e.g. **If Peter was/were** here, he would tell us what to do.
- ◆ We use **If I were you ...** when we want to give advice.
e.g. **If I were you, I'd talk** to him about my problem.

7 Choose one of the prompts from the list to say what you would do in each of the situations below.

order a pizza, complain to the manager, light some candles, go to hospital, call the police, stay in bed

- You see someone robbing a bank.
If I saw someone robbing a bank, I would call the police.
- A shop assistant is rude to you.
- You fall over and break your arm.
- You burn your dinner.
- There is a power cut in your house.
- You catch a bad cold.

8 Look at the pictures and the prompts. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Shall I paint the fence red or green?*
SB: *If I were you, I'd paint it red.*

1 	2
3 	4
5 	6
paint the fence/red/green	order a salad/a sandwich
have some coffee/orange juice	buy a dog/a goldfish
go to Japan/France	take up golf/baseball

9 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense to make correct type 2 conditional sentences.

- If I *...were...* (be) you, I *...would study...* (study) for the exams.
- If we *.....* (have) a car, we *.....* (go) for a drive in the country.
- Kim *.....* (buy) some new clothes if she *.....* (have) enough money.
- If cameras *.....* (not/cost) so much, we *.....* (buy) one.
- John *.....* (lend) you some money if you *.....* (ask) him.
- He *.....* (open) the door if he *.....* (have) the key.
- We *.....* (paint) the house if we *.....* (have) the time.
- If she *.....* (get) good grades, she *.....* (go) to university.
- If I *.....* (be) rich, I *.....* (never/ work) again.
- Helen *.....* (post) the letters if she *.....* (have) some stamps.

Type 3 Conditionals



Jack missed the bus yesterday, so he was late for work.

*If Jack **hadn't missed** the bus, he **wouldn't have been** late for work yesterday.*

Type 3 conditionals express **imaginary** situations in the **past**; that is, they refer to past situations that did not happen.

They are formed as follows:

If - clause	Main clause
If + past perfect	→ would/could/might + + have + past participle

e.g. *If she **had called** earlier, I **would have told** her about the meeting. (She didn't call earlier, so I didn't tell her about the meeting.)*

10 **Richard Brooks was very upset yesterday because he missed an important meeting. Look at the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.**

e.g. *If the airline **hadn't been** on strike, his flight **wouldn't have been** delayed. If his flight **hadn't been** delayed, ...*



- the airline / not be / on strike →
- his flight / not be / delayed →
- he / arrive / in New York / on time →
- he / attend / the meeting →
- he / sign / the contract →
- his boss / be / pleased with him →
- she / give / him / a promotion

11 **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense to make correct type 3 conditional sentences.**

- 1 If you ...*hadn't been*... (not/be) in a hurry, you ...*wouldn't/might not have forgotten*... (not/forget) your keys.
- 2 If he (remember) earlier, he (send) her a birthday card.
- 3 If you (not/be) ill, you (go) to the party.
- 4 Jason (not/break) his arm if he (be) more careful.
- 5 Helen (get) wet if she (not/take) her umbrella.
- 6 If I (do) my homework, my teacher (not/shout) at me.
- 7 You (pass) the test if you (study) more.
- 8 If she (close) the gate, the rabbit (not/run away).
- 9 She (lose) her keys if I (not/pick) them up.
- 10 If he (save) some money, he (be able) to go on holiday.

12 **Read the story below and write type 3 conditional sentences, as in the example.**



Ben offered to help his neighbour fix the roof so he climbed up the ladder. He fell off the ladder and broke his leg. He went to hospital. He met Linda there. They fell in love and got married six months later.

- 1 *If Ben **hadn't offered** to help his neighbour fix the roof, he **wouldn't have climbed** up the ladder.*
- 2 *If he **hadn't climbed** up the ladder,*
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

13

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 A: Mum, Dad shouted at me.
B: Well, if you ...*hadn't been*... (not/be) naughty, he ...*wouldn't have shouted*... (not/shout) at you.
- 2 A: I don't know what to do about my problem.
B: If I (be) you, I (talk) to my boss.
- 3 A: If I (win) lots of money, I (buy) a new house.
B: That's a nice idea. I (buy) a new car.
- 4 A: I failed my exam today.
B: Well, if you (study) harder, you (not/fail).
- 5 A: I've got terrible toothache.
B: If I (be) you, I (go) to the dentist's.
- 6 A: I'm sorry.
B: What for?
A: If I (not/leave) the door open, the puppy (not/escape).
- 7 A: Why are you upset?
B: Because it's all my fault. If I (not/be) late, we (not/miss) the bus.
- 8 A: Where (you/go) if you (can) travel anywhere in the world?
B: If I (can), I (go) to America.
- 9 A: I've lost my bag with my purse and my keys inside.
B: Well, if I (be) you, I (report) it to the police.
- 10 A: Ouch! I dropped a glass and cut my finger.
B: Well, if you (be) careful, you (not/cut) yourself.

14

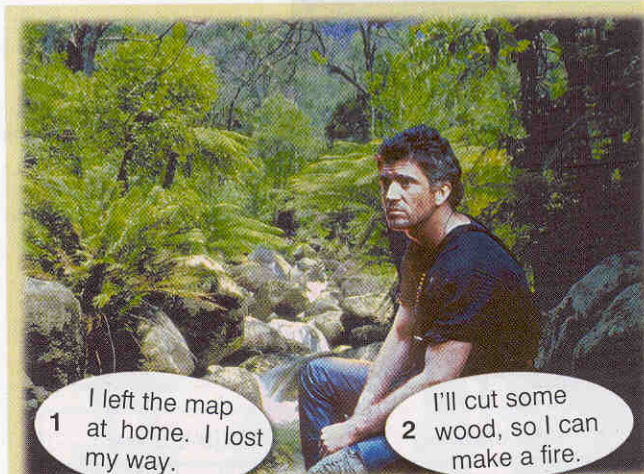
Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 If you ...*had looked*... (look) both ways before crossing the street, you wouldn't have been knocked down.
- 2 If I (be) you, I would phone my mother tonight.
- 3 If he hadn't stopped the car, he (have) an accident.
- 4 I (give) some money to charity if I won a competition.
- 5 Unless we (leave) now, we'll be late.
- 6 Your friend wouldn't have phoned if you (not/meet) her in the street.

- 7 If I hadn't woken up early, I (be) late for work.
- 8 If I (have) more time, I would tidy the garden.
- 9 If John (phone), can you take a message?
- 10 If I were you, I (get) someone to help me.

15

Henry is lost in the forest and he's thinking. Use his thoughts to write conditional sentences, as in the example. Then, state the type of conditional (1, 2 or 3).

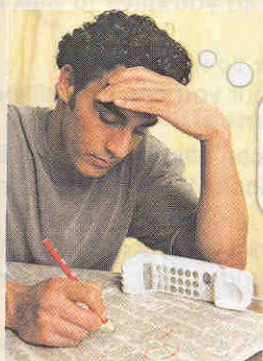


- 1 I left the map at home. I lost my way.
- 2 I'll cut some wood, so I can make a fire.
- 3 I don't have any food. I'm hungry.
- 4 I'll sit under a tree. I won't get wet.
- 5 I'll get some water from the stream. I can have a drink.
- 6 No one can hear me. I can't shout for help.
- 7 It's dark. I can't find the path.

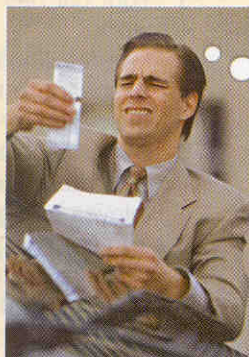
1 *If I hadn't left the map at home, I wouldn't have lost my way. (3)*

- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

Wishes



I wish I could find a job.



I wish I hadn't parked my car here.



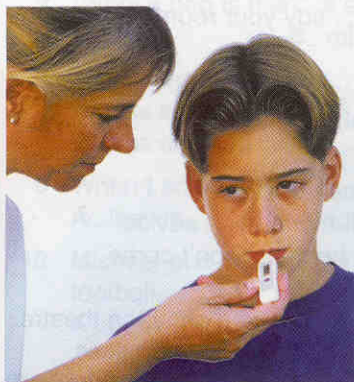
I wish my son would stop interrupting me.

- ◆ We use the verb **wish** and the expression **if only** to express a wish. **If only** is more emphatic than **I wish**.
 - ◆ We use **wish/if only + past simple** for the **present** when we want to say that we would like something to be different.
e.g. *I wish/if only I had a lot of money. (But I don't have a lot of money.)*
 - ◆ We use **wish/if only + past perfect** to express regret that something happened or did not happen in the **past**.
e.g. *I wish I had come to your party last night. (But I didn't come to your party.)*
If only I had listened to your advice. (But I didn't listen to your advice.)
 - ◆ We use **wish/if only + would** for a polite imperative. e.g. *I wish you would put your things away.* and to express our wish for a change in a situation or someone's behaviour because we are annoyed by it.
e.g. *I wish it would stop raining. (wish for a change in a situation)*
If only Susan would stop playing the music so loud. (wish for a change in someone's behaviour)
- Note:** a) We can use **were** instead of **was** in the first and third person singular after **wish** or **if only**. However, **were** is more often used in formal English.
e.g. *I wish I were taller. (formal English) – I wish I was taller. (everyday English)*
- b) After the subject pronouns **I** and **we**, we use **could** instead of **would**.
e.g. *I wish I could help you. (NOT: I wish I would help you.)*

16

Tony has got a bad cold. He has to stay in bed. Read what he says and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *I wish I didn't have a temperature.*



- I've got a temperature.
- I've got a sore throat.
- I want to play outside in the snow, but I can't.
- I have to take medicine.
- I have to stay in bed.
- I can't go to my friend's party tonight.
- None of my friends are here with me.

17

Scott has been on holiday. He had a terrible time. Read what he says and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *I wish it hadn't rained every day.*



- It rained every day.
- The beach was a long way from the hotel.
- The hotel was dirty.
- My hotel room was small.
- I lost my luggage.
- My wallet was stolen.

18

Mrs Taylor is annoyed with her neighbours. What does she say? Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *I wish Alan wouldn't play his trumpet late at night.*

<p>1</p>  <p>Alan/play his trumpet late at night</p>	<p>2</p>  <p>Mrs Parker's dog/bark all day</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>Mr Fox/mow the lawn at 5 am</p>
<p>4</p>  <p>Mrs Edison/leave rubbish on the pavement</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>the Smiths/have a party every weekend</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>Miss Brown/pick my flowers</p>

19

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A: It's still raining.
B: Yes, I wish it *...would stop...* (stop). I want to go out for a walk.
- A: Have you seen that film?
B: No, I wish I (see) it when it was on at the cinema.
- A: You look tired today.
B: I've been busy. I wish I (do) my Christmas shopping earlier.
- A: Lisa, I wish you (remember) to take the dog for a walk.
B: Sorry. I'll go now.
- A: Do you like your job, Doris?
B: Yes, but I wish I (not/have) to travel so far every day.
- A: Did you have a good holiday?
B: Yes, but I wish I (be) still on holiday now.
- A: Do you like your new car?
B: Yes, but I wish it (not/cost) so much.
- A: I hate travelling by bus.
B: So do I. I wish I (can) drive.

20

Read the following sentences. What wishes would you make corresponding to the words in bold?

- Your car has broken down so you have to walk to work.
I wish I didn't have to walk to work.
- You want to bake a cake, but you can't remember the recipe.
- It is raining heavily and you can't find your umbrella.
- You didn't remember to lock the front door and thieves broke in.
- You are on a diet, but you want to eat some chocolate.
- You are having an exam today, but you haven't studied at all.
- You want to go on holiday, but you haven't got enough money.

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- I think Tom should look for a better job.
would If I were Tom, I would look for a better job.
- Mary regrets shouting at her friend.
had Mary wishes she had not shouted at her friend.
- Why don't you stop complaining?
wish I wish you would stop complaining.

21

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- Peter regrets spending his holidays with his family.
had Peter *...wishes he hadn't spent...* his holidays with his family.
- Why don't you stop spending your money on useless things?
wish I spending your money on useless things.
- You should go on a diet, Sheila.
would If I on a diet, Sheila.
- Why don't you tidy your room more often?
wish I tidy your room more often.

22

Correct the mistakes.

- I wish I would go home now.
- If I were you, I will ask my father's advice.
- Unless you don't ask her, she won't come.
- I wish you will listen to me.
- I wish I saw the play when it was on at the theatre.
- I wish I will go on long holidays to hot places.
- If I will have time, I will tidy up before I go out.

Revision Box

23 Rewrite the following sentences in the passive.

- Mother threw that box away weeks ago.
That box was thrown away weeks ago (by Mother).
- The maid polished the silver yesterday.
.....
- We must take the dog to the vet.
.....
- The mayor will open the new cinema tomorrow.
.....
- We couldn't put out the fire because of the wind.
.....
- Have you done the washing yet?
.....

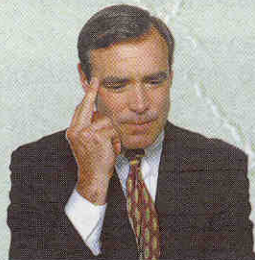
24 Choose the correct answer.

- I ... **A** ... you as soon as I get there.
A will phone B phone C am phoning
- Jason said that he to Florida before.
A had never been B have never been
C will never be
- You tidy your room before you go to the cinema.
A may to B must C must to
- James the newspaper when the phone rang.
A reads B is reading C was reading
- This photograph by my grandfather.
A was taken B took C taken
- My sister made this cake all by
A herself B her C she
- 'Whose bag is this?' 'It's'
A me B mine C my
- Liz is tired. She the windows all morning.
A has been cleaning B is cleaning
C has cleaned
- When I arrived, Paul
A leaves B already left C had already left
- Michael and Steven are friends. They like football.
A both B all C neither

ORAL Activity

Edward Simpson and Laura Smithers aren't very happy with their lives. Look at the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *Edward wishes he didn't have a stressful job.
He wishes his wife wouldn't spend so much money on clothes.*



- has a stressful job
- his wife spends a lot of money on clothes
- his children ask him for money all the time
- has no time for himself
- feels lonely
- doesn't go out often
- has difficulty making friends
- doesn't have any hobbies

WRITING Activity

Edward and Laura sent letters to Dorothy Forester, who is a counsellor, asking for advice. First, read Dorothy's letter to Edward and put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Then, write Dorothy's letter of advice to Laura.

Dear Mr Simpson,

Thank you for your letter asking for my advice.

To begin with, if I (1) (be) you, I would try to find ways to change my life. If you took time off work more often, you (2) (not/feel) so stressed. If you asked your wife to stop spending a lot of money, she (3) (listen) to you. Your children would also stop asking you for money all the time if you (4) (be) stricter. Finally, you would feel a lot better if you (5) (take up) a hobby and made some time for yourself.

I hope my advice will help.

Best wishes,
Dorothy

Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)

1

Choose the correct item.

- James ...**A**... when Wendy came into the room.
A was sleeping B slept C has been sleeping
- I think I go to university when I leave school, but I'm not sure yet.
A should B will C am going
- My mother always the clothes on Monday.
A is washing B has washed C washes
- They here for twenty years.
A work B have been working
C were working
- Greg down, opened the book and began to read.
A had sat B sat C was sitting
- He a magazine once a week, but now he doesn't.
A used to buy B had bought C didn't use to buy
- We on holiday to Italy tomorrow.
A have gone B go C are going
- The train to London at six o'clock in the morning.
A leaves B leave C has left
- At four o'clock yesterday afternoon, Chris his birthday presents.
A opens B was opening C has opened
- The children to bed by the time the guests arrived.
A have already gone B will go
C had already gone

2

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- It isn't necessary for you to wear a suit.
have You ...*don't have to wear*... a suit.
- You are not allowed to go out after dark.
must You after dark.
- It's possible that she'll visit us tomorrow.
may She tomorrow.
- I'm sure they're on holiday.
must They on holiday.
- I'm bored. Let's go somewhere else.
shall I'm bored. somewhere else?
- You don't have to go to work on Saturday.
needn't You on Saturday.
- I advise you to look for a job soon.
ought You a job soon.

3

Rewrite the following sentences in the passive.

- You must wash the car today.
The car must be washed today.
- They are taking him to hospital now.
.....
- Who will make the speech?
.....
- The cat has destroyed the flowers.
.....
- Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet'.
.....
- Someone sent Susan a red rose.
.....
- The fire had burnt down the house by the time the fire brigade arrived.
.....
- Who invented the television?
.....

4

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A: I've lost my purse. Have you seen it?
B: No. If you ...*had been*... (be) more careful, you wouldn't have lost it.
- A: Did you buy that dress you saw?
B: No, but I wish I (buy) it. It was lovely.
- A: You should read this article. It's really interesting.
B: Pass me my glasses. I can't see unless I (wear) them.
- A: If only I (go) to the party.
B: You can go if you help me first.
- A: Can you lend me some money?
B: I would if I (have) any, but I'm broke at the moment.
- A: You failed your exam because you didn't study.
B: I know. I wish I (study) more.
- A: Do you want to come on holiday with me this year?
B: I will come if I (have) enough money.
- A: If only I (not/spend) so much money this month.
B: Yes, we'd be able to go out for a meal tonight.
- A: That music is very loud.
B: I wish Tom (not/play) his music so loud. It gives me a headache.
- A: Shall we go to the party on Friday night?
B: We'll go unless I (be) too tired.

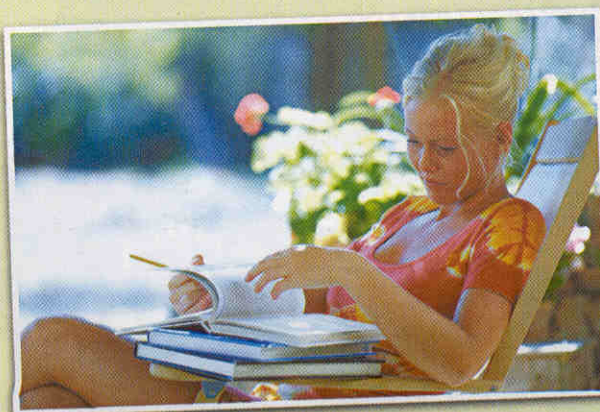
5 Choose the correct item.

- You ...**B**... borrow my notebook if you want to.
A are able to B can C might
- I stay late at work tonight. There is lots of work to do.
A have to B can C needn't
- Charlie speak German when he was young, but now he can.
A can't B could C couldn't
- You ask for directions if you get lost.
A should B are able to C mustn't
- you water the plants for me?
A May B Will C Shall
- Bill get a new job after he had completed the training course.
A should B can C was able to
- '..... I help you, sir?' 'Yes please.'
A May B Must C Will
- She visit us on Sunday if she has time.
A might B shall C mustn't

6 Turn from direct into reported speech. Use an appropriate introductory verb where necessary.

- Janet said, 'I'm leaving for Jamaica tomorrow.'
Janet said that she was leaving for Jamaica the following day.
- Paul said to me, 'Open the door for me, please.'
.....
- Anna said, 'Let's go ice-skating this weekend.'
.....
- 'What time is it?' he said to me.
.....
- Jonathan said to them, 'Please, please don't go without me.'
.....
- Amanda said to me, 'I have found a new job.'
.....
- Samantha said to Tim, 'I'll send you a postcard from Italy.'
.....
- Mother said, 'I'll bake a cake for the party.'
.....
- The fire-fighter said to the people, 'Don't go into the house.'
.....
- Brian said, 'No, I won't type the report.'
.....
- 'Can you give me a lift?' she asked her father.
.....

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.



My best friend is called Pam. She likes (1) ...*going*... (go) to the theatre and she also enjoys (2) (read). She is always happy (3) (help) anybody and doesn't mind (4) (do) the housework for her mother every week. She tries to avoid (5) (argue) with other people and usually manages (6) (keep) a happy smile on her face. She has got lots of nice clothes and she lets me (7) (borrow) them sometimes when we go out together. I always look forward to (8) (see) Pam because she is very funny and she makes me (9) (laugh).

8 Underline the correct word(s).

- This is my picture. I drew it me/myself.
- The reason **why/where** I'm late is that I missed the bus.
- Is this bicycle **your/yours**?
- That house **was built/built** by Harry and Sally.
- If only he **hadn't forgotten/didn't forget** to post the letter.
- That's the girl **who/whose** father is a policeman.
- That's your coat. Put **it/its** away now, please.
- He **has worked/is working** in this factory for twenty years.
- Tommy **is living/lived** by himself at the moment.
- This vase was a gift from my parents. They gave it to **I/me**.
- Laura **was able to/could** repair her bicycle when it got a flat tyre.
- This is the bag **which/who** I bought in France.
- If I **will see/see** Peter, I'll give him your message.
- That's the house **that/where** I lived when I was a child.
- Shall/Will** I answer the door for you?
- Gary, **which/who** lives next door, owns a dog and two cats.

Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

Adjectives



This is a **small** village. It looks **peaceful**. There are some **lovely old** houses.

- ◆ **Adjectives** describe nouns (a **big** car). They have the same form in the singular and plural. e.g. a **small** house – **small** houses
- ◆ Adjectives go before nouns. e.g. a **beautiful** girl. They can also be used alone after the verb **to be** and after verbs such as **look, smell, sound, feel, taste, etc.** e.g. **Jack is tall. You look sad.**
- ◆ There are two kinds of adjectives: **opinion adjectives** (**beautiful, good, etc.**), which show what a person thinks of somebody or something, and **fact adjectives** (**long, strong, young, etc.**), which give us factual information about age, size, colour, etc.

ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

- ◆ Opinion adjectives go before fact adjectives. e.g. a **beautiful silk** dress
- ◆ When there are two or more fact adjectives in a sentence, they usually go in the following order:

	Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	
a	small	old	square	blue	Thai	silk	scarf

- ◆ We do not usually have a long list of adjectives before a single noun. A noun is usually described by one, two or three adjectives at the most. e.g. an **expensive Persian silk** carpet

1

Fill in the gaps with the correct adjective from the list.

lovely, fresh, quiet, cosy, bright, excellent, tall, comfortable

The cottage was beautiful. It had a 1) **...cosy...** atmosphere. The rooms were small but 2) There was a 3) fire burning in the fireplace, and the smell of 4) roses filled each room. The old furniture was in 5) condition. The garden was 6) There were 7) trees all round the garden and colourful flowers near the cottage. It was very 8) and peaceful. I didn't want to leave.

2

Fill in the correct adjective.

oval, careful, thick, adventurous, long, generous

- 1 Explorers are brave and **adventurous**.....
- 2 Rugby balls aren't round, they're
- 3 Uncle Sam is a very man. He always brings us gifts when he visits us.
- 4 This book is very It doesn't fit in my bag.
- 5 This dress is too I need to shorten it.
- 6 Ricky is a driver.

3

You have inherited the following things from your grandmother. Describe them by putting the adjectives in the right order.

e.g. a **small wooden** table

	
1 a wooden/small/table	2 some round/china/beautiful plates
	
3 a crystal/Venetian/blue/vase	4 a(n) gold/expensive/ring
	
5 two silver/old/candlesticks	6 a(n) antique/wooden/lovely/radio

Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

Adverbs



Farmers wake up **early** in the morning.
They work **hard** all day.
They go home **late** in the evening.

- An **adverb** can be one word (carefully) or a phrase (in the park). Adverbs show manner (how), place (where), time (when), frequency (how often), etc.

e.g. He drives **carefully**.
(How does he drive? Carefully. - adverb of manner)
Your coat is **here**.
(Where is it? Here. - adverb of place)
He left for Italy **yesterday**.
(When did he leave? Yesterday. - adverb of time)
He **usually** eats out.
(How often does he eat out? Usually. - adverb of frequency)

- Adverbs usually go after verbs. e.g. He walks **slowly**.

- Adverbs of frequency go after auxiliary verbs and the verb **to be**, but before main verbs.

e.g. He **is always** on time for appointments.
He **has never** visited Paris.
He **always** comes to work on time.

Formation of adverbs

- We usually form an adverb by adding **-ly** to the adjective.

e.g. dangerous - dangerously

- Adjectives ending in **-le** drop the **-e** and take **-y**.

e.g. gentle - gently

- Adjectives ending in **consonant + y** drop the **-y** and take **-ily**.

e.g. easy - easily

- Adjectives ending in **-l** take **-ly**.

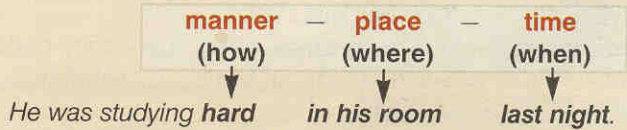
e.g. wonderful - wonderfully

- Some adverbs are not formed according to the above rules. They have either a totally different form or the same form as the adjective.

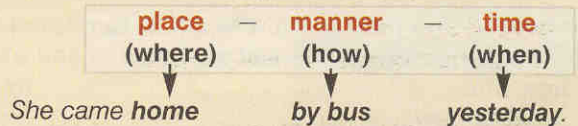
Adjective		Adverb
good	→	well
fast	→	fast
hard	→	hard
early	→	early
late	→	late

ORDER OF ADVERBS

- When there are two or more adverbs in the same sentence, they usually come in the following order:



- If there is a verb of movement (go, come, leave, etc.) in the sentence, then the adverbs come in the following order:



- 4** Write the adverbs of the adjectives in the list in the correct box.

bad, quiet, impossible, easy, noisy, careful, horrible, lazy, simple

-ly	le → ly	consonant + y → ily

- 5** Put the words from the list below into the correct column.

good, nicely, well, monthly, sadly, cheap, tall, strongly, fast, cold, early, softly, wide, carefully, late, pretty, loudly, hard

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective and Adverb

Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

6 Put the adverbs from the list below into the correct box.

sadly, quickly, here, last month, always, never, there, slowly, somewhere, tomorrow, cheerfully, often, now, last week, sometimes, anywhere

<p>how (adverbs of manner)</p>	<i>sadly</i>
<p>where (adverbs of place)</p>	
<p>when (adverbs of time)</p>	
<p>how often (adverbs of frequency)</p>	

7 Choose an appropriate adjective from the list, turn it into an adverb and put it in the correct sentence.

careless, fluent, proud, polite, happy, angry, heavy, serious, quick, careful

- The children were playing *happily*
- The man drove and crashed his car.
- The teacher shouted because the students were making too much noise.
- Jonathan speaks English
- It was raining yesterday, so we stayed indoors.
- The shop assistant placed the crystal vase on the shelf.
- I asked the man to help me cross the road.
- Harry ran to catch the bus, but it had already left.
- The actor who won the Academy Award was smiling on the stage.
- He looked at me and told me never to lie to him again.

8 Underline the correct word.

- A: I'm going to the shops now.
B: Make sure you carry the eggs careful/carefully. Don't break them.
- A: I'm going to Alison's house for dinner tonight.
B: You'll enjoy it. Alison is a very good/well cook.
- A: Have you finished that puzzle already?
B: Yes, it was really easy/easily.
- A: Mr Jones shouted angry/angrily today.
B: I know. He was in a very bad/badly mood all day.
- A: Your mother is always cheerful/cheerfully, isn't she?
B: Yes, she is always in a well/good mood.

9 Underline the correct word.

I organised a surprise party for my friend, Edith, last weekend. All the guests arrived early and waited **1) quiet/quietly** until Edith got there. When she walked through the door, we all cheered **2) loud/loudly**. We went into the garden because it was a very **3) warm/warmly** day. The guests all gave Edith **4) nice/nicely** presents and Edith thanked them **5) sincere/sincerely**. We danced **6) happily/happy** to the music and had a **7) wonderful/wonderfully** time. The party was **8) successful/successfully**.

10 Put the words in the correct order.

- always / wake up / I / early
I always wake up early.
- by plane / we / to Spain / went
.....
- to work / she / ran / quickly
.....
- every afternoon / sleeps / my dog / in the garden / peacefully
.....
- they / in the kitchen / quietly / were talking
.....
- all morning / happily / he / played / in his room
.....
- they / the street / carefully / crossed
.....
- yesterday / by taxi / I / went / to work
.....
- in winter / they / never / go / to the beach
.....
- sometimes / takes / he / to the park / his children
.....

Comparisons



SIZE: 6 metres
COST: £3,000
The speedboat is **big**.
It is also **expensive**.



SIZE: 35 metres
COST: £4,000,000
The yacht is **bigger than** the speedboat. It is also **more expensive**.



SIZE: 80 metres
COST: £30,000,000
The cruise ship is **the biggest** and **the most expensive** of all.

- ◆ Adjectives have got three forms: **positive, comparative** and **superlative**.
- ◆ We use the **comparative form + than** to compare two people or things.
e.g. Bob is **shorter than** Paul. My car is **more expensive than** yours.
- ◆ We use **the + superlative form + of/in** to compare one person or thing with more than one person or thing in the same group. e.g. Rick is **the shortest of all**. We use **in** when we talk about places. e.g. Stella is **the most beautiful woman in** the world. (NOT: ~~of~~ the world)

Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives

- ◆ One-syllable and two-syllable adjectives form the comparative by adding **-er**, and the superlative by adding **-est**. e.g. tall - taller - tallest
- ◆ Adjectives of three or more syllables form the comparative with **more** and the superlative with **most**.
e.g. intelligent - **more** intelligent - **most** intelligent
- ◆ Some two-syllable adjectives, such as clever, stupid, narrow, gentle, friendly, etc., form the comparative and superlative either with **-er/-est** or with **more/most**.
e.g. narrow - **narrower** - **narrowest**/narrow - **more narrow** - **most narrow**

Spelling Rules

- ◆ One-syllable adjectives ending in **-e** take **-r** in the comparative and **-st** in the superlative form.
simple - simpler - simplest
- ◆ Two-syllable adjectives ending in **-y** turn the **-y** into **-i** and then take **-er/-est**.
easy - easier - easiest
- ◆ Adjectives ending in a stressed vowel between two consonants double the final consonant and then take **-er/-est**.
fat - fatter - fattest but cold - colder - coldest

11 Write the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives.

1 long	...longer...	..longest...
2 expensive	.....	.....
3 strong	.....	.....
4 difficult	.....	.....
5 intelligent	.....	.....
6 close	.....	.....
7 popular	.....	.....
8 safe	.....	.....
9 important	.....	.....
10 loud	.....	.....
11 weak	.....	.....
12 tasty	.....	.....
13 comfortable	.....	.....
14 delicious	.....	.....

Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adverbs

Adverbs form their comparatives and superlatives in the same way as adjectives.

◆ Adverbs which have the same form as the adjective take **-er** in the comparative and **-est** in the superlative.

e.g. *hard - harder - hardest, early - earlier - earliest*

◆ Adverbs formed by adding **-ly** to the adjective take **more** in the comparative and **most** in the superlative.

e.g. *carefully - more carefully - most carefully*

12 Write the comparative and superlative forms of the following adverbs.

- 1 responsibly *more responsibly* *most responsibly*
- 2 hard
- 3 fast
- 4 noisily
- 5 early
- 6 satisfactorily

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst
much/many/ a lot of	more	most
little	less	least
far	further/farther	furthest/farthest

13 Use the prompts below to make sentences, as in the example.

- 1 an ostrich / an owl (big)
An ostrich is bigger than an owl.
- 2 gold / silver (expensive)
.....
- 3 Canada / Brazil (cold)
.....
- 4 feathers / stones (light)
.....
- 5 a car / a bicycle (fast)
.....

14

Use the prompts below to make sentences, as in the example.

- 1 Have you read Sheldon's new novel? It's exciting, isn't it?
Yes, it's the most exciting novel I've ever read.
- 2 Have you seen the new Harvey film? It's frightening, isn't it?
- 3 Have you met Mary's cousin? She's beautiful, isn't she?
- 4 Have you tasted my mum's cheesecake? It's delicious, isn't it?
- 5 Have you heard Michael's new record? It's bad, isn't it?

15

Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives/adverbs in brackets.

- A: Excuse me, is there a 1) *...faster...* (fast) way to get to Clovelly?
- B: If you take that road, which is 2) (narrow) than the others, it's only 15 minutes' walk. That's the 3) (quick) way.
- A: Ah, thanks. We've been walking for 35 minutes and we thought we would get there 4) (soon). We can't even see Clovelly yet.
- B: It's hidden by the trees, they're 5) (tall) than the houses. You'll like Clovelly. It's one of the 6) (beautiful) villages in north Devon.
- A: That's what we've heard. It has some of the 7) (pretty) houses, hasn't it?
- B: Yes, and the 8) (tasty) fish you've ever eaten!
- A: Thank you very much for your help. Bye.

16

Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adverbs in brackets, adding any necessary words.

- 1 Al swims *...faster than...* you do. (fast)
- 2 My sister drives us all. (carelessly)
- 3 I left the party you did. (late)
- 4 Catherine dances all. (beautifully)
- 5 The leading actress speaks all. (clearly)
- 6 My uncle gives to the poor my father does. (generously)
- 7 Jill Thomas works all. (hard)
- 8 My best friend plays chess I do. (well)

Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

17 Fill in the gaps with the **comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets, adding any necessary words. Then, answer the questions.**

- Which is ...*the coldest*... (cold) planet in our solar system? *Pluto*.
- Is the Gobi desert (large) the Sahara desert?
- Which is (heavy) animal in the world?
- Which is (long) wall in the world?
- Is Mount Everest (high) Kilimanjaro?
- Which is (small) continent in the world?
- Does the cheetah run (fast) the lion?
- Does the blue whale make a (loud) sound the polar bear?
- Which are (tall) buildings in the world?
- Has a falcon got (good) eyesight a human?

19 Put the adjectives in brackets into the **comparative or superlative form adding any necessary words.**

- A: What do you think of this dress, Julia?
 B: It's lovely. It's **1** ...*the nicest*... (nice) of all you've tried on yet.
 A: Yes, but I prefer short dresses.
 B: Well, it's true that this dress is **2** (long) the blue one, but it's also **3** (elegant).
 A: Yes, but it's **4** (expensive) dress we've seen so far.
 B: I know. The blue one is much **5** (cheap), but it doesn't look as good as the black one.
 A: Oh! I can't decide. What time is it?
 B: It's only 6 o'clock. We've got plenty of time.
 A: Really! I thought it was **6** (late) that.
 B: Why don't we go to another shop?
 A: No, I've decided. I like the black dress **7** (good). It's **8** (expensive), but it doesn't matter.
 B: OK. Let's go and pay for it.

Very - Much

very + positive form of an adjective/adverb
 e.g. It's **very hot** in here.

much + comparative form of an adjective/adverb
 e.g. Today is **much hotter than** yesterday.

18 Fill in the gaps with **very or much**.

- A: This book isn't ...*very*... interesting.
 B: Try reading this one.
- A: That's a beautiful car, isn't it?
 B: Yes, but it's more expensive than anything I can afford.
- A: This jewellery is nice.
 B: Yes, but the necklace is long, isn't it?
- A: I hate geometry, don't you?
 B: Actually, I find geometry more interesting than algebra.
- A: Peter thinks Laura is a polite girl.
 B: I know. Barry does, too.
- A: I want to lose weight, so I've taken up jogging.
 B: That's good, but did you know that aerobics is a more energetic form of exercise than jogging?

20 Fill in the gaps with the **comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets, adding the where necessary.**



My sister went on a school trip to a large outdoor swimming pool last week. Early in the morning, all the children got onto a bus with their teacher. It was **1** ...*the smallest*... (small) bus my sister had ever seen, so it was **2** (uncomfortable) journey she'd ever been on. After two hours, they reached their destination. It was **3** (hot) day of the year. When they saw the pool, the children couldn't believe their eyes. It was **4** (big) swimming-pool they had ever seen. There was even a huge water -slide! My sister said it was much **5** (enjoyable) than the rollercoaster at the funfair. Everyone had a fantastic time. When their teacher asked if they had enjoyed the trip, they all agreed that it was much **6** (good) than having lessons at school!

Types of Comparisons



The motorbike is **as fast as** the car.
 The motorbike **isn't as/so comfortable as** the car.
 The bicycle is **less expensive than** the motorbike.
 The bicycle is **the least expensive of all**.

◆ We use **as + adjective (positive form) + as** to show that two persons or things are similar in some way. In a negative sentence, we use **not as/so ... as**.

e.g. Peter is **as tall as** Tom.
 Tom is **not as/so strong as** Peter.

◆ We use **less + adjective (positive form) + than** for two persons or things.

e.g. This book is **less interesting than** that one.

◆ We use **the least + adjective (positive form) + of/in** for more than two persons or things.

e.g. The film we saw last night was **the least interesting of all** I've seen this month.

21

Complete the sentences to make correct statements about the three means of transport above, as in the example.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 The car is faster than the bicycle. | 9 ... is the most dangerous of all. |
| 2 ... is slower than ... | 10 ... is the cheapest of all. |
| 3 ... is the slowest of all .. | 11 ... is not as convenient as ... |
| 4 ... is more expensive than ... | 12 ... is more comfortable than ... |
| 5 ... is as fast as ... | 13 ... is the safest of all. |
| 6 ... is not as cheap as ... | 14 ... is the most expensive of all. |
| 7 ... is not as safe as ... | |
| 8 ... is more dangerous than ... | |

IN OTHER WORDS

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- Paul is stronger than Alan.
as Alan is **not as strong as** Paul.
- I have never read such an exciting book.
the It's **the most exciting book** I have ever read.
- The blue car is more expensive than the black one.
less The black car is **less expensive than** the blue one.
- This book has got 160 pages. That book has got 160 pages, too.
thick This book is **as thick as** that one.

22

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- Lisa is prettier than Clare.
as Clare is ... *not as pretty as* ... Lisa.
- It's the biggest house I've ever seen.
such I a big house.
- I've never heard such a beautiful song.
the It's I have ever heard.
- Meat isn't as healthy as vegetables.
than Vegetables are meat.
- Betty is 70 years old. Graham is 70 years old, too.
old Betty is Graham.
- My car is old. Your car is new.
than Your car mine.
- Samantha speaks French better than Josephine.
well Josephine doesn't Samantha does.
- I have never worn such a warm sweater.
the It's I have ever worn.
- This necklace costs £200. That necklace costs £200, too.
expensive This necklace that one.
- Peter is more handsome than Roger.
less Roger is Peter.

Revision Box

23 Choose the correct answer.

On 2nd September, 1666 a fire (1) in a baker's house in London. It was an accident (2) was the beginning of the (3) fire in London's history. The wind (4) hard, so the fire spread quickly through the city. It burned for three days and (5) a large part of the city, including a cathedral, several churches and thousands of homes. People tried to escape with (6) belongings in boats on the river, as their houses burnt down. Finally, the fire was put out and the rebuilding of London began. A magnificent new cathedral (7) and the people returned to new houses.

- 1 A was started B started C had started
- 2 A which B who C why
- 3 A worse B bad C worst
- 4 A blew B was blowing C had blown
- 5 A destroyed B had destroyed C has destroyed
- 6 A theirs B them C their
- 7 A was built B is built C was being built

24 Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- 1 Simon gave Rachel a gold ring for her birthday.
Rachel was given a gold ring by Simon for her birthday.
- 2 They are repairing the old bridge at the moment.
.....
- 3 Someone had informed the police about the planned robbery.
.....
- 4 They will announce the results early tomorrow morning.
.....
- 5 Alfred Hitchcock directed the film 'The Birds.'
.....
- 6 You must clean your room more often.
.....
- 7 Someone was following Clare while she was walking home.
.....
- 8 Someone guards the entrance to the embassy twenty-four hours a day.
.....

ORAL Activity

You have recently visited three different restaurants. Look at the information below and make comparisons, as in the example.



A Roberto's Pizza



B Red Dragon Restaurant



C Regency Restaurant

	A	B	C
large	*	**	***
expensive	*	**	***
healthy	*	***	**
convenient	**	*	***
comfortable	*	**	***

S1: The Red Dragon is larger than Roberto's Pizza.
S2: The Regency Restaurant is the most expensive of all.

WRITING Activity

Now, write a report comparing the three restaurants for the next issue of your magazine. Begin like this:

I visited three restaurants this week. The first one I went to was 'Roberto's Pizza' which is more convenient than the Red Dragon, because it is closer to bus stops and train stations.

The Plural



Dennis lives on a farm with his parents. What have they got on their farm?
They've got **one** horse, **four** rabbits, **two** geese, **four** ducks, **one** cockerel, **two** hens and **three** turkeys.

Spelling Rules

- ◆ Most nouns form their plural by adding **-s**.
one book - three books
- ◆ Nouns ending in **-s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x** or **-o** take **-es** in the plural.
bus - buses, dress - dresses, dish - dishes, peach - peaches, box - boxes, potato - potatoes
But some nouns ending in **-o** take only **-s**.
radio - radios, piano - pianos, studio - studios, video - videos, kilo - kilos, rhino - rhinos
- ◆ Nouns ending in a **vowel + -y** take **-s** in the plural. *toy - toys, boy - boys*
But nouns ending in a **consonant + y** drop the **-y** and take **-ies** in the plural.
cherry - cherries, lady - ladies

- ◆ Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** drop the **-f** or **-fe** and take **-ves** in the plural.

loaf - loaves, wife - wives

- But** some nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** take only **-s**.
roof - roofs, giraffe - giraffes, cliff - cliffs

Irregular Plurals

Some nouns do not form their plural according to the above rules. They have either a different form or the same form as in the singular.

These include:

child	—	children	goose	—	geese
man	—	men	mouse	—	mice
woman	—	women	sheep	—	sheep
foot	—	feet	ox	—	oxen
tooth	—	teeth	deer	—	deer

- 1 Write the plural.**
- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 orange ... <i>oranges</i> ... | 9 tall man |
| 2 baby | 10 roof |
| 3 watch | 11 radio |
| 4 tomato | 12 fast car |
| 5 chair | 13 life |
| 6 key | 14 party |
| 7 knife | 15 beautiful day |
| 8 foot | 16 class |

Pronunciation

The suffix of the plural form is pronounced:

- ◆ /s/ when the noun ends in a /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/ or /θ/ sound.
roofs, ducks, lamps, skirts, myths
- ◆ /ɪz/ when the noun ends in a /s/, /ks/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /z/ or /ʒ/ sound.
glasses, boxes, dishes, torches, fridges, noses, mirages
- ◆ /z/ when the noun ends in any other sound.
girls, dogs, knives, hens, beds

2 First, say the words in the plural, then, write them in the correct box.

basket, bush, ferry, cage, key, myth, bus, flower, desk, church, apple, dolphin, chair, hat, baby, dress, skirt, cherry, fox, bag, clock, piano, onion, bird, ball, cliff, box, radio, shirt, rose, dish, roof, song

/s/	<i>baskets,</i>
/ɪz/	<i>bushes,</i>
/z/	<i>ferries,</i>


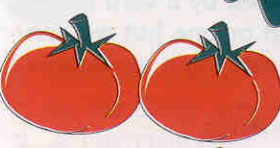





3 Put the words in brackets into the plural where necessary.

- A** A: Did you go shopping on Saturday?
 B: Yes, I did. I bought lots of things.
 A: What did you buy?
 B: I bought two (1) ... *scarves*... (scarf) and three (2) (T-shirt).
 A: Did you buy anything else?
 B: Yes. I went to a lovely shop and bought six (3) (cup) and four crystal (4) (glass).
 A: Gosh! You really bought lots of things!
 B: And I also bought two silver (5) (candlestick) for my aunt.
- B** A: I went to the zoo yesterday.
 B: Really? Which animals did you see?
 A: Well, first I saw a (1) (lion), and then I saw two (2) (giraffe).
 B: Is that all?
 A: No. I also saw three (3) (deer) and two (4) (rhino).
 B: Did you go to the monkey house?
 A: Yes, and there were three (5) (monkey) there. It was a great day.

4 Fill in the gaps with the correct number and one of the words from the list. Use the plural where necessary.

cucumber, tomato, radish, onion, pepper

- A: What do you need for the salad?
- B: Well, I need  (1) ... *four peppers*...,  (2), and  (3)
- A: Is that all?
- B: Not quite. I also need  (4) and  (5)

Countable/ Uncountable Nouns

◆ **Countable nouns** are nouns which can be counted and have a singular and plural form.
e.g. *one book, two books, three books*

◆ We put **a/an** before countable nouns in the singular.

a + consonant sound (/b/, /d/, /g/, /f/, /l/, /p/, etc.)
an + vowel sound (/æ/, /e/, /i/, /ɔ:/, /ʌ/, etc.)



a hat



two hats



an umbrella



two umbrellas

◆ **Uncountable nouns** are nouns which cannot be counted and they usually have no plural. These nouns include:

food: *cheese, butter, meat, salt, pepper, bacon, bread, chocolate, honey, jam, etc.*

liquids: *coffee, milk, water, tea, wine, lemonade, petrol, oil, etc.*

materials: *gold, iron, silver, wood, paper, etc.*

abstract nouns: *beauty, love, happiness, etc.*

others: *hair, money, news, snow, furniture, weather, advice, etc.*

◆ Uncountable nouns are followed by a verb in the singular. We do not use a/an or one but we can use **some**. Some is also used with countable nouns in the plural.

e.g. There is **some** meat in the fridge.
(NOT: There are ~~some meats~~ in the fridge.)
There is **some** bread on the table.
(NOT: There is ~~a bread~~ on the table.)

some + uncountable noun
some + plural countable noun



some meat
(NOT: a meat)



some books













5

Put 'C' for countable and 'U' for uncountable.

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 coffee ..U.. | 5 carrot ..C.. | 9 oil ..U.. |
| 2 book ..C.. | 6 beauty ..U.. | 10 jumper ..C.. |
| 3 furniture ..C.. | 7 money ..U.. | 11 friend ..C.. |
| 4 car ..C.. | 8 plate ..C.. | 12 advice ..U.. |

6

Fill in a, an or some.

1  ..some.. cherries	2  .. telephone	3  .. lemons
4  .. bread	5  .. tea	6  .. onion
7  .. apple	8  .. suitcase	9  .. biscuits
10  .. orange juice	11  .. flowers	12  .. coins

We can use countable and uncountable nouns after phrases of quantity such as: *a jar/bottle/piece/loaf/cup/bar/glass/kilo/carton/bowl/can/jug/slice/tin/packet, etc. + of.*

e.g. *Don't forget to buy me a jar of olives.*
They opened ten bottles of champagne.

7







Choose an appropriate noun + of to indicate quantity.

- some biscuits - four *packets of biscuits*
- some bread - three
- some tea - two
- some soap - two
- some pie - three
- some meat - two
- some sugar - three
- some water - six

8 Read the note Julia left for Jack and fill in the gaps with one of the words from the list. Use the plural where necessary.

bottle, tin, jar, carton, packet, can

Jack,
I'll be late home from work tonight. Can you do the shopping for me? We need:

two 1)  ...cartons... of milk, six 2)  of Coke, a 3)  of pasta, a 4)  of strawberry jam, three 5)  of cat food, and a 6)  of champagne.

It's our wedding anniversary. I hope you haven't forgotten!

Love,
Julia

Plural Nouns

◆ **Plural nouns** are nouns which represent a group of people or things and are followed by a plural verb. Such nouns include:

- a) people, police, clothes, stairs, etc.
e.g. *There were a lot of people at the party.*
- b) objects which consist of two parts such as: trousers, shorts, shoes, gloves, pyjamas, tights, glasses, earrings, socks, scissors, etc.
e.g. *Your trousers are in the wardrobe.*

◆ We can use a **singular verb** and the phrase **a pair of...** before objects which consist of two parts.

singular verb + a pair of	trousers shorts gloves, etc.
---------------------------	------------------------------------

Compare: *My shoes are dirty.*
There is a pair of shorts on the chair.

9 Underline the correct word.

- 1 How many children is/are there in your class?
- 2 Some people never do/does any exercise.
- 3 There is/are a pair of socks under the bed.
- 4 His new clothes was/were very expensive.
- 5 I can't find the stairs in this building. Where is/are they?
- 6 The police is/are looking for the criminal.
- 7 I want to cut some paper. Where is/are the scissors?
- 8 Your hair need/needs cutting.
- 9 Your pyjamas is/are on the bed.
- 10 The information you gave me was/were very helpful.
- 11 There was/were a lot of people at the cinema last night.
- 12 My shorts is/are made of silk.
- 13 His shoes is/are too small. He needs a new pair.
- 14 My parents is/are walking the dog at the moment.
- 15 These earrings was/were given to me by my grandmother.

One/Ones

We use the pronoun **one** in the **singular** and **ones** in the plural to avoid repeating the noun.

e.g. *I want a dress – a long red one.*
I don't like big cars. I like small ones.

10 Fill in the gaps with *one* or *ones*.

- 1 A: Which trousers do you want?
B: The black ones.
- 2 A: I don't like this shirt.
B: Try on this instead.
- 3 A: Which is your car?
B: The red
- 4 A: These socks are wet.
B: Put on some dry
- 5 A: Your glasses are broken.
B: I know. I'm going to buy some new
- 6 A: Which flowers do you prefer?
B: I think I prefer the white
- 7 A: Can I borrow a pen, please?
B: I'm sorry, I haven't got

The Indefinite Article

"A" / "An"

The indefinite article a/an is used:

- with singular countable nouns after the verb **to be** when we want to say what somebody/something is.



She's **an** actress.



It's **a** passport.

- with certain phrases to show how often someone does something.

e.g. We play tennis **once a week**.
They go on holiday **twice a year**.

The indefinite article a/an is not used:

- with uncountable or plural countable nouns. We can use **some** instead.



some bread



some eggs

- before an adjective when there is no noun after it. But when there is a noun after the adjective, we use **a** for adjectives which begin with a consonant sound and **an** for adjectives which begin with a vowel sound.



It's a hat. It is **green**.
It is **a green hat**.

11

Fill in the gaps with **a** or **an**.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 an ancient city | 6 interesting book |
| 2 woman | 7 rose |
| 3 old building | 8 August evening |
| 4 carrot | 9 owl |
| 5 film | 10 businessman |

12

What are the following people's jobs? Look at the pictures and the professions in the list and make sentences, as in the example.

basketball player, electrician, photographer, mechanic, optician, pilot, painter, typist

e.g. Jack is a painter.

1 Jack	2 Tim	3 Bob
4 Peter	5 Fiona	6 Sarah
7 Rick	8 Annie	

13

Fill in **a**, **an** or **some**.

- A: I bought ... **some**... butter and sugar.
B: Are you going to make cake?
- A: Would you like apple?
B: No, thank you.
- A: What did you have for lunch today?
B: **a**..... piece of cheese and bread.
- A: I've lost my socks. Have you seen them?
B: Actually, I found socks on the floor this morning. They must be yours.
- A: I need information for my history project.
B: Why don't you go to the library?
- A: I'm going to the post office. Do you need anything?
B: Could you get me stamps and **a**..... envelope, please?

The Definite Article "The"

The definite article **the** is used with singular and plural nouns. e.g. *the horses, the farm, the man*

We use "the":

- ◆ with nouns when we are talking about something specific, that is, when the noun is mentioned for a second time or is already known. In other words, when we can answer the question 'Who?' or 'Which?'.



The elephants in the picture are in a circus. (Which elephants? The elephants we can see in the picture.)

- ◆ with nouns which are unique.



the Colosseum, the earth, the sky, the sun

- ◆ before the names of rivers (*the Amazon*), seas (*the Baltic Sea*), oceans (*the Pacific*), mountain ranges (*the Rocky Mountains*), deserts (*the Gobi*), groups of islands (*the Dodecanese*) and countries when they include words such as 'state', 'kingdom', etc. (*the United States*).
- ◆ before the names of musical instruments. *the piano, the guitar, the saxophone.*
- ◆ before the names of hotels (*the Hilton Hotel*), theatres/cinemas (*the Apollo Theatre*), ships (*the Titanic*), organisations (*the EU*), newspapers (*The Guardian*), and museums (*the Louvre*).
- ◆ before nationality words (*the French*) and families (*the Taylors*).
- ◆ before titles when the person's name is not mentioned. *the Queen, the Prince of Wales*
- ◆ before the words morning, afternoon and evening. *He goes to work in the morning.*

We don't use "the":

- ◆ with plural nouns when we talk about them in general, that is, when we cannot answer the question 'Who?' or 'Which?'.



Elephants live in the jungle. (Which elephants? Elephants in general.)

- ◆ before proper names. *This is Helen.*
- ◆ before the names of countries (*England*), cities (*Paris*), streets (*Mason Avenue*), parks (*Central Park*), mountains (*Everest*), islands (*Santorini*), lakes (*Lake Michigan*) and continents (*Europe*).
- ◆ before the names of meals (*breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc.*) and games/sports (*golf, tennis, basketball, etc.*). *Golf is a relaxing sport.*
- ◆ with the words *this/that/these/those*. *this bag, those cars (NOT: ~~the~~ this bag)*
- ◆ with possessive adjectives or the possessive case. *That isn't my car — it's Keith's.*
- ◆ before titles when the person's name is mentioned. *Queen Elizabeth, President Clinton*
- ◆ with the words school, church, bed, hospital, prison or home when we refer to the purpose for which they exist.
 - Mary goes to school at 8:30 in the morning. (=Mary is a student.)*
Mary's mother went to the school to get Mary's school report. (=Mary's mother went to the school as a visitor, not as a student.)
 - Grandpa is in hospital. (=He is a patient.)*
Grandma went to the hospital to see Grandpa. (=Grandma visited Grandpa. She isn't a patient.)

Pronunciation

The is pronounced /ðə/ before words which begin with a consonant sound. e.g. **the** book, **the** phone

The is pronounced /ði:/ before words which begin with a vowel sound. e.g. **the** orange, **the** elephant

14 First, put the nouns in the correct boxes, then, read them out.

key, apple, box, boy, table, octopus, artist, ship, helicopter, umbrella, antenna, spoon, egg, carpet, ant, object

The /ðə/	The /ði:/
...key.....	...apple.....
.....
.....
.....

15 Fill in the where necessary.

- Have ...the... Browns gone on holiday?
- I think this bag is Brenda's.
- The hotel is called Park Hotel.
- Come on, Ben, dinner is ready!
- Let's play football on Saturday.
- I'm going to hospital to visit my aunt.
- new shopping centre was opened by Queen.
- I'm learning to play piano.

16 Fill in a or the.

At (1) ...the... weekend, Roy's parents took him to (2) funfair. They parked their car in (3) big field and then went off to have some fun. Roy bought (4) hot dog and (5) doughnut from (6) stall at (7) entrance to (8) funfair.

Roy went on lots of (9) rides, but his favourite was (10) roller-coaster. It was very scary! They talked to fortune-tellers and they went into rooms full of strange mirrors. They stayed until Roy was exhausted.

That night, Roy dreamed about (11) wonderful time he'd had at (12) fun-fair that day.

17 Fill in a or the.

- A: Have you made all (1) ...the... arrangements for our holiday yet?
 B: Yes, I think so. I've booked (2) flight to Paris.
 A: Did you find (3) good hotel?
 B: Well, it isn't (4) luxurious hotel, but it's near (5) centre of (6) city and each bedroom has (7) private bathroom.
 A: Good. Did you go to (8) bank to change (9) ...the... money into French francs?
 B: Yes, I've done that. Is there anything else?
 A: I don't think so. I'll pack (10) suitcases tomorrow night.
 B: I'll book (11) taxi to take us to (12) airport, so we can leave our car at home.
 A: Good idea. I think we're going to have (13) very good holiday.

18 Underline the correct form.

- Thompsons/The Thompsons live on a farm.
- This is my friend, the Melanie/Melanie.
- We went on a tour of Europe/the Europe last summer.
- The President Clinton/President Clinton made an interesting speech.
- John is staying at home/the home tonight.
- The new shopping centre was opened by Mayor/the Mayor.
- The baby sleeps in the afternoon/afternoon.
- That the cat/cat belongs to my sister.
- Do you know how to play violin/the violin?
- The swimming/Swimming is my favourite sport.
- When we went to Rome, we visited Colosseum/the Colosseum.
- They stayed at the Bridgeford/Bridgeford Hotel.

19 Correct the mistakes.

- We go to the bed at 9 o'clock every night.
- Can you give me some advices, please?
- These trousers is very expensive.
- The police is here.
- Jonathan went to the Brazil on holiday last year.
- There are a lot of sheeps in that field.
- The news about the accident were shocking.
- My car is the red ones which is parked outside.
- Aunt Lucy gave me a pair of gloves for my birthday.
- They play golf once the week.

Revision Box

20 Choose the correct answer.

- They ... **A** ... by 7 o'clock.
A had already eaten B were eating C eat
- I for an hour before he came home.
A am sleeping B had been sleeping C sleep
- You buy some bread.
A ought B must C shall
- The house in 1901. It is very old.
A is built B built C was built
- She is young to stay up late.
A - B too C enough
- I have toothache. I see my dentist soon.
A mustn't B need C must
- I a book when the door bell rang.
A am reading B read C was reading
- That's the man son is a famous actor.
A whose B who C where
- She a new book at the moment.
A writes B is writing C was writing

21 Look at the pictures and say what each item can't be and what each item must be.

e.g. *It can't be a camel. It must be a lion.*



1 lion or camel?



2 star or starfish?



3 umbrella or coat-hanger?



4 violin or guitar?



5 chair or table?



6 TV or computer?

ORAL Activity

Simon tidied the attic a few days ago and came across some old objects. Look at the pictures and say what Simon found, using *a, an* or *some*.

e.g. *Simon found an old black telephone.*



1 old black telephone



2 pair of woollen gloves



3 old books



4 hourglass



5 mask



6 green radio



7 old coins



8 old typewriter

WRITING Activity

Simon is writing a letter to his sister. He is telling her what he found in the attic. Complete the letter.

Dear Emma,

You can't imagine what I found while I was tidying the attic a few days ago.

I found the old black telephone that we used to have in the hall twenty years ago. I also found the pair of woollen gloves which Grandma gave me when I was five.

UNIT 18

Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few

Some/Any/No



There is **some** cheese. There isn't **any** flour.
Is there **any** bread? No, there isn't.
There is **no** bread.

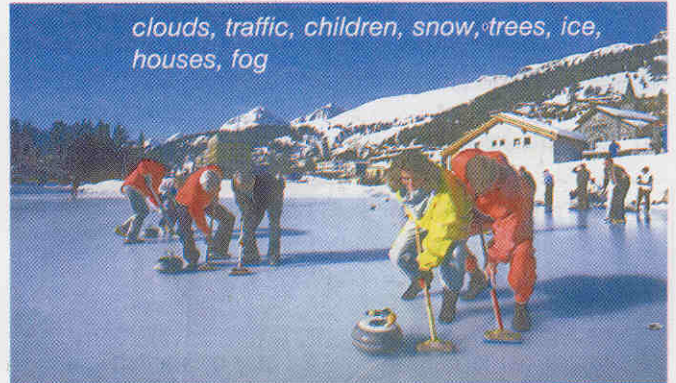


There are **some** potatoes. There aren't **any** eggs.
Are there **any** bananas? No, there aren't.
There are **no** bananas.

- ◆ We use **some**, **any** and **no** with uncountable nouns (tea, water, etc.) and plural countable nouns (books, trees, etc.).
e.g. some tea, some books
- ◆ **Some** means a little or a few. We use some in **positive** statements.
e.g. He's got **some** money. (=He's got a little money.)
She's got **some** books. (=She's got a few books.)
- ◆ We use **any** in **questions** and **not any** in **negations**.
e.g. Have you got **any** coffee? No, I haven't got **any** coffee.
- ◆ We can use **no** instead of **not any** in **negations**.
e.g. They haven't got **any** friends. / They've got **no** friends.
- ◆ We use **some** in questions when we are making an offer or a request.
e.g. Would you like **some** tea? (offer)
Can I have **some** water, please? (request)

	Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
Countable	some	any	not any/no
Uncountable	some	any	not any/no

1 Look at the picture. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.



clouds, traffic, children, snow, trees, ice, houses, fog

e.g. SA: Are there any clouds in the picture?
SB: No, there aren't.

2 Fill in the gaps with some, any or no.

- A: I'm very tired. I haven't had (1) ...any... sleep.
B: If I were you, I'd go to bed and get (2) sleep.
A: I haven't got (3) time. I have to do (4) shopping, because there is (5) food left in the fridge.
B: Don't worry. I've got (6) free time. I'll go shopping, so you can get (7) rest.

Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few

Someone/Something/
Somewhere



The woman is **somewhere** in the countryside.
There is **nobody** with her.
She isn't carrying **anything** in her hands.

◆ **Someone/somebody** (a person), **something** (a thing) and **somewhere** (in/to/at a place) are used in positive statements.

e.g. There is **somebody** in the garden.
He lives **somewhere** near Park Road.

◆ **Anyone/anybody, anything** and **anywhere** are used in questions and negations.

e.g. Is there **anything** in your bag?
There **isn't anything** in my bag.

◆ **No one/nobody, nothing** and **nowhere** can be used in negations instead of **not anyone/anybody, not anything** and **not anywhere**.

Compare: There **isn't anybody** in the room.
There **is nobody** in the room.

	Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
People	someone somebody	anyone anybody	no one / not anyone nobody / not anybody
Things	something	anything	nothing / not anything
Places	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere/not anywhere

Who? someone/anyone/no one
somebody/anybody/nobody
What? something/anything/nothing
Where? somewhere/anywhere/nowhere

3

Choose the correct answer.

- Does ...**A**... know where Peter is?
A anyone B someone C anywhere
- It's very dark in here. I can't see
A any B nothing C anything
- I'm going to buy oranges.
A no B any C some
- 'Who was at the door?' '.....'
A No one B Something C Anyone
- There is milk left in the fridge.
A not B no C any
- I'm bored. There is to do here.
A something B anything C nothing
- Please can I have water?
A some B any C no
- There's at the door. Go and open it.
A somebody B nobody C anybody
- I'm afraid there is tea left.
A some B any C no
- I must buy for Pam's birthday.
A nothing B anything C something

When we use **any, anyone/anybody, anything** and **anywhere** in affirmative statements, there is a difference in meaning.

- You can call me **any** time you like.
(It doesn't matter when.)
- Anyone/Anybody** can go to the new sports centre.
(It doesn't matter who goes.)
- You can ask me **anything** you want.
(It doesn't matter what.)
- We can go **anywhere** you wish.
(It doesn't matter where.)

4

Fill in the gaps with **any, anyone/anybody, anything** or **anywhere**.

- A: What time do you want dinner?
B: Oh, ...**any**... time you like.
- A: What shall I wear for the party?
B: Wear you like. It's up to you.
- A: When can we meet for lunch?
B: Oh, day next week. I haven't made any plans.
- A: Where can I find this magazine?
B: At shop in the town centre.
- A: Where shall we go for our holidays?
B:, as long as it's hot!
- A: Who can drive the company car?
B: who has a driver's licence.

Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few

◆ We use **every** before singular countable nouns.
e.g. *Every student must come to school on time.*

◆ We use the pronouns **everyone/everybody/everything** and the adverb **everywhere** in affirmative, interrogative and negative sentences. We use a singular verb with these words.

e.g. *Is everybody/everyone here?*
(NOT: ~~Are everybody...~~)
Everything you need is on that desk.

5 Fill in the gaps with **every, everyone/everybody/everything or everywhere**.

- 1 ...**Every**... person in my family has their own car.
- 2 My uncle knows about gardening.
- 3 Your desk is untidy. There are papers
- 4 When I arrived home, had gone out.
- 5 I like walking, so I go on foot.
- 6 My grandmother goes shopping day.

6 Fill in each gap with a suitable verb from the list in the singular.

be - know - live - smell - feel

- 1 It's a beautiful day. Everybody ...**is**... in the garden.
- 2 Everybody I know near my house.
- 3 Everyone the answer to that question. It's easy.
- 4 Everything ready for the party this evening.
- 5 Everyone happy when summer comes.
- 6 Everything delicious!

7 Fill in the gaps with the derivatives of **some, any or every**.

- 1 A: What's the matter, John?
B: There's ...**something**... in my shoe, Mum. My foot hurts.
- 2 A: Did see you go into the house?
B: I don't think so. The street was empty.
- 3 A: Look at this mess!
B: Oh! There are toys
- 4 A: Are you going this weekend?
B: No, I'm staying at home.
- 5 A: Are you hungry?
B: Yes, I want to eat.
- 6 A: Who gave you this book?
B: at work.
- 7 A: Is there good on television tonight?
B: Not really.

A lot of -
Much - Many



There is a lot of bread in the picture.
Is there much flour? No, there isn't much.
Are there many mushrooms? No, there aren't many.

◆ We usually use **a lot of/lots of** in positive statements with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns. We omit **of** when **a lot/lots** is not followed by a noun.

e.g. *Helen's got a lot of/lots of friends.*
There's a lot of sugar in that bowl.

But *Have you got many photos? Yes, I've got a lot.*

◆ We usually use **much** and **many** in questions and negations. **Much** is followed by uncountable nouns and **many** is followed by plural countable nouns.

e.g. *Is there much milk in the fridge? There isn't much tea left. Have you got many friends?*
I haven't got many friends.

◆ We use **how much** and **how many** in questions.

How much + uncountable noun → amount
How many + countable noun → number
e.g. *'How much sugar do you take in your tea?'*
'Just a spoonful.'

'How many students are there in your class?'
'There are fifteen.'

	Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
Countable nouns	a lot (of) lots (of)	(how) many	many
Uncountable nouns	a lot (of) lots (of)	(how) much	much

Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few

8 Fill in the gaps with *how much* or *how many* and then answer the following questions about yourself.

- 1 ...*How many*.. apples do you eat every day? *About three.*
- 2 milk do you drink every day?
- 3 books do you buy every month?
- 4 pocket money do you get every week?
- 5 people did you meet on your last holiday?
- 6 films do you watch every month?
- 7 sugar do you take in your tea?

9 Fill in *many*, *much* or *a lot of*.

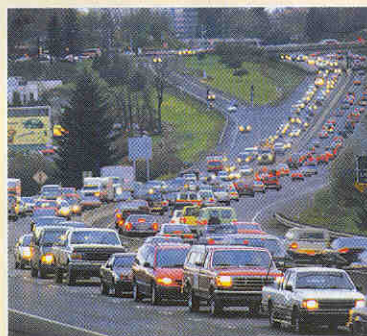
- 1 A: I've got ...*a lot of*... spare time today.
B: Great! Let's go shopping together.
- 2 A: Are there cinemas in this town?
B: No, there's only one.
- 3 A: There isn't snow on the ground.
B: No, the sun has melted it.
- 4 A: There are flowers in the garden.
B: Yes, they're beautiful, aren't they?
- 5 A: How times did you have a shower yesterday?
B: Three! It was a very hot day.
- 6 A: I've got things to do today.
B: I'm busy today, too.
- 7 A: There isn't water in that vase. The flowers will die.
B: I'll put some more in.
- 8 A: Helen is always alone.
B: No she isn't. She's got friends.
- 9 A: Are there fish in this river?
B: No, not any more.
- 10 A: Can you lend me some money?
B: No, sorry - I haven't got money with me.

10 Complete the answers with *a lot*, *much* or *many*.

- 1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes,*a lot*.....'
- 2 'Is there any milk in the fridge?' 'Yes, but not
- 3 'Have you got any vegetables?' 'Yes, but not
- 4 'How many letters have you typed?' 'Not
- 5 'Are there any eggs in the basket?' 'Yes,
- 6 'How much salt did you put in the soup?' 'Not
- 7 'Did you get any presents for your birthday?'
'Yes,
- 8 'How much did your dress cost?' 'Not
- 9 'Are there many children in your class?' 'Yes,
- 10 'How much homework do you have each day?'
'Not

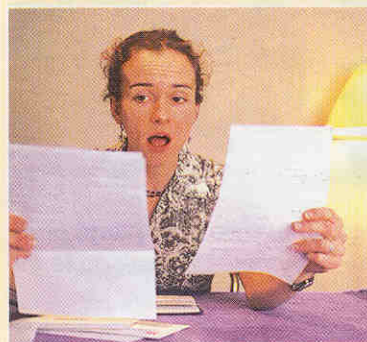
Too many / Too much

◆ **Too many** can be used with plural countable nouns and has a negative meaning. It shows that there is more of something than is wanted or needed.



There are **too many cars** on the road. We won't get to the reception on time. (=There are so many cars on the road that we won't get to the reception on time.)

◆ **Too much** can be used with uncountable nouns and has a negative meaning. It shows that there is more of something than is wanted or needed.



She spent **too much money** last month. She can't pay her bills now. (=She spent so much money last month that she can't pay her bills now.)

11 Fill in the gaps with *too much* or *too many*.

- 1 A: If you eat ...*too much*... chocolate, you'll get fat.
B: Then I'll only eat a little bit!
- 2 A: You bought oranges at the market yesterday.
B: Never mind, we can use some for juice.
- 3 A: Don't spend money tonight.
B: I won't. I want to save some for another day.
- 4 A: There are flowers in that vase.
B: I know, but I couldn't find another one.
- 5 A: All the students failed the exam.
B: I know. of the questions were difficult.
- 6 A: How did you spoil the soup?
B: I put salt in it.
- 7 A: I don't like this coffee.
B: Why not?
A: There's sugar in it.

A few/few -
A little/little



Liz has got **a few** apples. She can make an apple pie.



Mary has got **(very) few** apples. She can't make an apple pie.



Tom has got **a little** money. He can go to the restaurant.



Peter has got **(very) little** money. He can't go to the restaurant.

◆ We use **a few/few** with plural countable nouns (cars, cassettes, etc.).

A few means 'not many, but enough.'

e.g. We've got **a few** oranges. We can make some juice. (= We've got enough oranges.)

Few means 'hardly any, almost none' and can go with **very** for emphasis.

e.g. There are **(very) few** biscuits in the box. It is almost empty. (= There are only one or two biscuits.)

◆ We use **a little/little** with uncountable nouns (ice, honey, flour, etc.).

A little means 'not much, but enough.'

e.g. She's got **a little** time. She can go shopping.

Little means 'hardly any, almost nothing' and can go with **very** for emphasis.

e.g. We've got **(very) little** coffee. There's not enough for all of us.

12

Use a few or a little for each of the nouns in the list.

e.g. **a few** plates **a little** coffee

plates, coffee, honey, cars, ice-cream, milk, women, sheep, water, cups, flour, forks, babies, apple juice, pepper, dolls, marmalade, dresses

13

Fill in few, a few, little or a little.

- Shall I make ...**a few**... cakes for tea on Sunday?
- I hope there are people I know at the party.
- Could I have milk in my cup, please?
- The train drivers are on strike. Very people came to work.
- I hope you've almost finished. There is very time left.
- It's cold. That's why there are very children in the park today.
- Do you need more days to think about my proposal?
- We must go shopping. There's very food in the fridge.
- I'm bored. There's very to do on Wednesday evenings.
- I'm sorry. I'll be late. We're having problems at work.

14

Underline the correct word.

- A: When will you be back?
B: Soon. I'm only going away for a few/a little days.
- A: How do you like your coffee?
B: I think you've put **too many/too much** milk in it.
- A: When can I come and visit you?
B: Come on **every/any** Tuesday. I'm free on that day.
- A: What would you like to eat?
B: Can I have **some/any** of that cake, please? It looks delicious.
- A: Who's coming to the party?
B: I've invited **everyone/anyone** from the office.
- A: Do you know **many/much** foreign people?
B: No. Actually, I know **very few/a few**.
- A: I've lost my keys. I can't find them **anywhere/nowhere**.
B: Don't worry. I'm sure they're **everywhere/somewhere** in this room.
- A: I asked **everyone/someone**, but **nobody/anybody** wants to help me with my project.
B: Okay, I'll give you **no/some** help.
- A: Did you buy the biscuits I wanted?
B: No, they didn't have **any/no** in the supermarket.

15 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Could you lend me any ^{some} money, please?
- 2 How many time have we got left?
- 3 There aren't too much chocolates in the box.
- 4 I don't know nothing about chemistry.
- 5 I'm looking for anything in the cupboard.
- 6 I want to go nowhere nice and quiet for my holidays.
- 7 I don't need some help with my homework.
- 8 You can have something you want. Just ask for it.
- 9 Did you catch some fish in the river?
- 10 Everybody know that the Earth is round.

Revision Box

16 Choose the correct answer.



The Titanic was a luxurious large passenger ship (1) ...A... everyone thought was unsinkable. It set sail from Southampton, England on (2) first voyage. It (3) to New York, in the USA. (4) were over two thousand people on board the ship for the journey. On April 14th, 1912, the Titanic hit an iceberg and water started (5) into the ship. Nothing (6) be done to stop it and so, eventually, at 2.20 am on April 15th, the ship (7) into the icy water. About 1,500 people died on that terrible night. On September 1st, 1985, experts (8) the wreck of the Titanic on the ocean floor.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1 A which | B it | C who |
| 2 A it | B its | C it's |
| 3 A went | B had gone | C was going |
| 4 A There | B They | C These |
| 5 A to flow | B flow | C flows |
| 6 A can | B could | C couldn't |
| 7 A sunk | B sank | C had sunk |
| 8 A had discovered | B have discovered | C discovered |

ORAL Activity

You are going camping by the sea with a friend. Look at the items in the box and decide which you need to take with you and which you don't. Then, make sentences using *some* or *any*, as in the example.

e.g. S1: We needn't take **any** tools.
S2: We must take **some** string.



WRITING Activity

You're writing a letter to another friend who would like to go camping by the sea. Using your notes from the Oral Activity, tell them what they must and needn't take. Begin like this:

Dear, (your friend's name)

I was happy to hear that you want to go camping too. I hope you have given it a lot of thought, because it's not going to be easy. There are some things you must take with you. First of all, you must take some
.....but you needn't take any

Questions with Yes/No answers



A: **Have you been here before?**
 B: **No, I haven't.**
 A: **Do you think we'll catch many fish?**
 B: **Yes, I do. It looks like a good spot.**

◆ Questions with Yes/No answers begin with an **auxiliary or modal verb** (is, are, do, does, can, etc.) which is followed by the subject. We usually answer these questions with Yes or No.
 e.g. **Are you writing a letter?** Yes, I am.

Can you play the piano? No, I can't.

◆ When the main verb is in the present simple, we form the question with the auxiliary verb **do** or **does**.

e.g. **Does Jack live in a flat?** Yes, he does.

When the main verb is in the past simple, we form the question with the auxiliary verb **did**.

e.g. **Did it rain last night?** No, it didn't.

1 Make questions, as in the example.

- 1 I have got black hair. (you)
Have you got black hair, too?
- 2 I can swim. (he)
- 3 I like playing tennis. (Sharon)
- 4 I read a book last week. (Mike)
- 5 I have bought a new car. (Anne)
- 6 I am wearing a red dress. (you)

2

Fill in the gaps with the correct auxiliary or modal verb.

- 1 A: *...Is...* John coming home tomorrow?
B: No, he isn't.
- 2 A: your father own a car?
B: Yes, he does.
- 3 A: you got a pair of gloves?
B: No, I haven't.
- 4 A: they speak French?
B: Yes, they can.
- 5 A: you been waiting long?
B: No, I haven't.
- 6 A: the children enjoy the play?
B: Yes, they did.

3

Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 Jonathan / when / could / he / swim / three / was?
Could Jonathan swim when he was three?
- 2 you / this / tomorrow / will / finish?
.....
- 3 eggs / buy / you / some / to / did / remember?
.....
- 4 has / house / yet / George / moved?
.....
- 5 help / clean / me / can / the / you / kitchen?
.....

4

Tony and Erica are at a party. They have just been introduced. Read the dialogue and fill in the gaps with the correct auxiliary or modal verb.

T: *...Do...* you know Mary well?
 E: Yes, we work together.
 T: you enjoying the party?
 E: Yes, there are lots of people here.
 T: I get you a drink?
 E: No, thank you. I'm not thirsty.
 T: you know everyone here?
 E: No, only Mary. She invited me.



Negative Questions



- A: **Don't you think** he looks like me?
 B: Yes, I think he does.
 A: **Isn't he quiet?**
 B: Yes, he doesn't cry very much.

◆ **Negative questions** are formed with **not**, but there is a difference in the word order between the full form and the short form.

Full form: **auxiliary + subject + not + verb**
 e.g. *Do you not want to watch that film?*

Short form: **auxiliary + n't + subject + verb**
 e.g. *Don't you want to watch that film?*

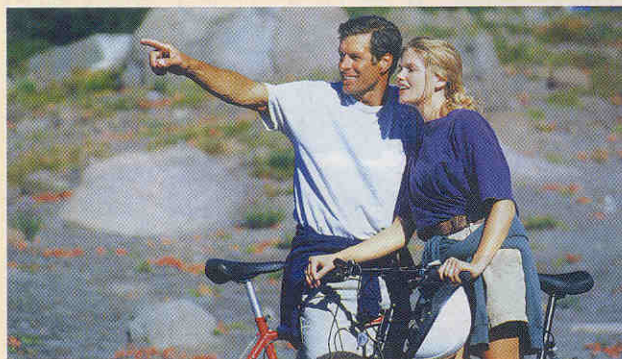
◆ We use negative questions in everyday speech a) to ask for confirmation e.g. *Didn't you see James yesterday?* and b) to express:

- surprise. e.g. *Can't you ride a bicycle?*
- admiration. e.g. *Doesn't he speak English well!*
- annoyance. e.g. *Can't you stop talking?*

5 Write the short form of the following negative questions.

- Have I not told you to be careful with the knife?
Haven't I told you to be careful with the knife?
- Do you not know what the capital of Italy is?
.....
- Do you not find him handsome?
.....
- Have you not ever swum in the sea?
.....
- Can you not keep quiet while I'm on the phone?
.....
- Did they not know that the meeting was cancelled?
.....
- Have you not paid the bill yet?
.....
- Are you not taking the children with you?
.....

Wh- Questions



- A: Look at that.
 B: **What is it?**
 A: I think it's a castle.
 B: **How can we** get there?
 A: I don't know. There must be a path.

Wh- questions begin with a question word such as **who, what, where, when**, etc. We put the auxiliary or modal verb before the subject.

question word + auxiliary/modal + subject

people: who/whose

- e.g. *'Who did you ask for help?'* 'My sister.'
'Whose is that umbrella?' 'It's Kate's.'

things: what/which

- e.g. *'What do you need?'* 'A pencil.'
'Which bag does Helen like?' 'The black one.'

place: where

- e.g. *'Where did Father go?'* 'To the market.'

time: when/how long (ago)/how often

- e.g. *'When did Peter sign the contract?'* 'Yesterday.'
'How long have they been married?' 'Three years.'
'How long ago did you get your degree?'
 'Four years ago.'
'How often does Annette travel abroad?'
 'Once a month.'

quantity/number: how much/how many

- e.g. *'How much money have you got?'* 'Very little.'
'How many books did you buy?' 'Two.'

manner: how

- e.g. *'How did Tom come home?'* 'By bus.'

reason: why

- e.g. *'Why does Sharon want to leave?'* 'She's bored.'

age: how old

- e.g. *'How old is your brother?'* 'Thirty-two.'

distance: how far

- e.g. *'How far is it to the cinema?'*
 'About ten minutes' walk.'

What-Which-How



What stories do you like?



Which dress shall I buy?

◆ **What + noun/auxiliary/modal**

This structure is usually used when we ask about things and there is an unlimited choice.
e.g. *What films do you like?* (There are many kinds of films such as westerns, comedies, adventure films, etc., so the choice is unlimited.)
What can I get you?

◆ **Which + noun/auxiliary/one/ones**

This structure is used when we ask about things or people and there is a limited choice.
e.g. *Which author do you like best – Agatha Christie or Ian Fleming?* (You have to choose between these two authors, so the choice is limited.)
Which would you prefer to buy – a car or a bike?
Which one did you buy? 'Neither.'

◆ **How + adjective/adverb/much/many/auxiliary**

This structure is used when we want to ask 'In what way?', the amount or the number.
e.g. *How tall is he?* 'About 1.70m.'
How fast can you run? 'Not very fast.'
How much money did you spend? 'A lot.'
How many sisters have you got? 'Two.'
How do you get to work? 'By bus.'

6 Fill in the gaps with *what* or *which*.

- A: ...*What*... countries have you been to so far?
B: I've been to France, Spain and Portugal.
A: would you like to visit again some day?
B: Um, Spain, I think.
- A: I've got three red blouses. do you like best?

- B: The one with the white collar.
- A: can I do for you?
B: I'd like some chocolates, please.
A: ones?
B: Those in the red box, please.
- A: are you looking for?
B: My shoes. Have you seen them?
A: pair do you mean?
B: My new blue suede ones.
- A: do you like doing in your free time?
B: I like reading Agatha Christie's novels.
A: is your favourite?
B: 'Murder on the Orient Express.'

7 Fill in the gaps with *how* or *what*.

-*How*..... old are your grandparents?
- number did you dial?
- can I get you to drink?
- are you?
- many people were at the wedding?
- can I do to help you?
- colour hair has Jane got?
- long is she going to stay here?

8 Fill in the gaps with *many*, *much*, *far*, *often* or *long*.

- A: How ...*far*... is it from your house to the airport?
B: About an hour's drive.
- A: How did you stay in the US?
B: Not very long, a couple of weeks.
- A: How do you go shopping?
B: Every Saturday morning.
- A: How people have you invited to the party?
B: Just a few.
- A: How sugar did you put in my coffee?
B: Not much. Why?
A: It's too bitter.
- A: How is it from the capital to the border?
B: About a day's journey, I'd say.
- A: How times have I asked you to knock before coming into my office?
B: I'm sorry. I won't do it again.
- A: How does your husband take you out to dinner?
B: Only once a year – on our anniversary!
A: Oh!
- A: How will I have to wait before the doctor can see me?
B: He'll be with you in a few minutes.

9 Fill in the gaps with the correct question word(s). Then, choose the correct answer to each question.



HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW ABOUT SWITZERLAND?

- 1 ...*Where*... is Switzerland?
A In eastern Europe.
B In central Europe.
C In northern Europe.
- 2 is the capital of Switzerland?
A Bern B Zürich C Geneva
- 3 countries surround Switzerland?
A France, Italy, Austria and Germany
B France, Germany and Austria
C France, Italy, Austria, Germany and Lichtenstein
- 4 was Johanna Spyri?
A A Swiss inventor who designed the first watch.
B A Swiss writer who wrote 'Heidi.'
C A Swiss skier who won four Olympic medals.
- 5 official languages are spoken in Switzerland?
A Two B Three C Four

10 Fill in *who, whose, what, which, where, when, how long, how often, what time, why, how much or how many.*

- 1 '...*When*... did you move house?' 'Last month.'
- 2 '..... do you go to bed?' 'At 11 o'clock.'
- 3 '..... bag is this?' 'Tara's.'
- 4 '..... dogs have you got?' 'Three.'
- 5 '..... didn't she phone?' 'Because she forgot.'
- 6 '..... is your cup?' 'The white one.'
- 7 '..... did you eat for breakfast?' 'Toast.'
- 8 '..... do you go swimming?' 'Twice a week.'
- 9 '..... did your jumper cost?' '£32.'
- 10 '..... did you live in Germany?' 'Ten years.'
- 11 '..... do you live?' 'Next to the school.'
- 12 '..... did you phone this morning?' 'Uncle John.'

11 Fill in *what, how long, when, how, how much, how many, why or where.*

- Travel Agent: Good morning, sir. **1)** ...*What*... can I do for you?
Customer: I'd like to go on holiday.
Travel Agent: Certainly. **2)** do you want to go?
Customer: I'd like to go somewhere hot and sunny.
Travel Agent: **3)** do you want to go for?
Customer: Two weeks.
Travel Agent: **4)** do you want to leave?
Customer: On 2nd August.
Travel Agent: **5)** people will be going?
Customer: Four people.
Travel Agent: Good. I suggest two weeks in the south of France.
Customer: **6)** will it cost?
Travel Agent: Two hundred pounds per person.
Customer: **7)** will we get there?
Travel Agent: By plane. **8)** do you ask?
Customer: Because I hate travelling by boat.

12 Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- 1 *Did you feed the baby?*
Yes, I fed him an hour ago.
- 2
Jane buys new clothes **twice a year**.
- 3
This is **Michael's** desk.
- 4
No, I'm not going to his party.
- 5
It's only **a ten-minute walk** from my house to the cinema.
- 6
I started work **on Monday**.
- 7
I go to bed **at 11 o'clock**.
- 8
I closed the door **because I was cold**.
- 9
No, I didn't go shopping yesterday.
- 10
My sunglasses cost **£45**.
- 11
Fifty people were invited to Helen's wedding.
- 12
Jonathan works in **a bank**.

Subject/Object Questions

◆ **Subject questions** are questions we ask when we want to find out who or what did something; that is, when we want to know the subject of the sentence. These questions usually begin with the words **who**, **what** or **which**. In subject questions, the verb is in the affirmative form.

e.g. **Who sent you this postcard?**
 (NOT: ~~Who did send you this postcard?~~)
What happened while I was away?
 (NOT: ~~What did happen while I was away?~~)

subject	verb	object
→ Mary	loves	Tom.
→ Who	loves	Tom?

◆ **Object questions** are questions we ask when we want to know the object of the sentence. These questions usually begin with the words **who**, **what** or **which**. In object questions, the verb is in the interrogative form.

e.g. **Who did you meet at the theatre?**
What do you have to tell me?

subject	verb	object
Mary	loves	→ Tom.
← Who	does Mary love?	

13 Choose the correct answer.

- Who spoke to Paul? **B**
 A Paul spoke to Mary.
 B Mary spoke to Paul.
- What did Helen give you?
 A Helen gave me a book.
 B I gave Helen a book.
- Who invited Sheila to the party?
 A Sheila invited Bob to the party.
 B Bob invited Sheila to the party.
- Who was Jane looking for?
 A Jane was looking for Peter.
 B Peter was looking for Jane.
- What was in the box?
 A The dress was in the box.
 B The box was in the dress.
- Who likes children?
 A I like children.
 B Children like me.

14

Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- Who works with Ken?**
 Larry works with Ken.
-
 Paul met **George**.
-
 James is seeing **the doctor** tomorrow.
-
Peter has found a new job.
-
 Mum is **cooking lunch**.
-
Sarah phoned Richard.
-
 She is reading **a book**.
-
 They welcomed **the President**.
-
Nicola went on holiday with Joanne.
-
 They are building **a house**.
-
 Helen likes **Ron**.
-
Jenny lives with Bill.

If a verb is followed by a preposition, in object questions the preposition comes at the end.

e.g. **Who shall I give it to?** **What is Bill waiting for?**

15

Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

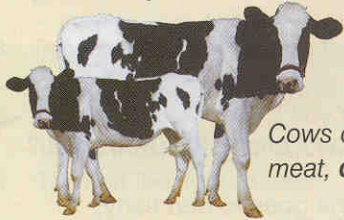
- Who did you get a message from?**
 I got a message from **Jack**.
-
 Linda is talking to **Paul**.
-
 He's looking at **some old photos**.
-
 Sandra bought a present for **her parents**.
-
 Paul comes from **Britain**.
-
 The children went to the park with **their nanny**.
-
 She borrowed this dress from **Ann**.
-
 Tim is looking for **his pen**.

Question Tags

- ◆ **Question tags** are short questions at the end of statements. We mainly use them in speech when we want to confirm something or when we want to find out if something is true or not.



They're binoculars,
aren't they?



Cows don't eat
meat, do they?

She has got a
lot of bags,
hasn't she?



- ◆ We form a question tag with the auxiliary or modal verb of the main sentence and the appropriate subject pronoun.

e.g. *Don is leaving tomorrow, isn't he?*
Tina can't knit, can she?

- ◆ When the verb of the sentence is in the present simple, we form the question tag with the auxiliary verb **do/does** and the subject pronoun. When the verb is in the past simple, we form the question tag with the auxiliary verb **did** and the subject pronoun.

e.g. *Sharon doesn't like dancing, does she?*
They paid the bill, didn't they?

- ◆ When the sentence is positive, the question tag is negative.

e.g. *He robbed the bank, didn't he?*

- ◆ When the sentence is negative, the question tag is positive.

e.g. *She won't leave without us, will she?*

- ◆ When the sentence contains a word with a negative meaning like **never**, **hardly**, **seldom** or **rarely**, the question tag is positive.

e.g. *She hardly goes anywhere, does she?*

- ◆ Some verbs/expressions form question tags differently. Study the following examples.

I am → aren't I?

I am tall, aren't I?

Imperative → will/won't you?

Stop talking, will/won't you?

Don't → will you?

Don't move, will you?

Let's → shall we?

Let's sit here, shall we?

I have (got) → haven't I?
(=I possess)

He has got a car, hasn't he?

I have → don't I?
(other meanings)

You have a big breakfast every day, don't you?

There is/are → isn't/aren't there?

There is a woman in the room, isn't there?

This/That is → isn't it?

This is Tom's coat, isn't it?

Intonation

- ◆ When we are sure of the answer and expect agreement, the voice goes down in the question tag.



e.g. *These are penguins, aren't they?*

- ◆ When we aren't sure of the answer and we want to check information, the voice goes up in the question tag.



e.g. *He isn't working at the moment, is he?*

16 Underline the correct answer.

- 1 A: You're going on holiday soon, aren't you/are you?
 B: Yes, I am. You've been to Spain before, have you/haven't you?
 A: Yes. It was great. You'll enjoy it. You'll send me a postcard, will you/won't you?
 B: Of course!
- 2 A: Your brother has got a dog, hasn't he/has he?
 B: Yes, he has. You don't want a puppy, do you/don't you?
 A: Well, actually I do. You haven't got any, haven't you/have you?
 B: Yes, you can have one if you want.
- 3 A: Tom bought you these flowers, didn't he/did he?
 B: Yes, he did. They're beautiful, are they/aren't they?

17 Fill in the correct question tag.

- 1 You don't like cheese, ...do you.....?
- 2 She is tired,?
- 3 We have got enough money,?
- 4 He doesn't live with his parents,?
- 5 They haven't got a dog,?
- 6 He likes eggs,?
- 7 She isn't a teacher,?
- 8 They are married,?
- 9 We aren't late,?
- 10 Paul can swim,?
- 11 That jacket isn't too small,?
- 12 Bessie did her homework,?
- 13 I am early,?
- 14 You didn't eat all of it,?

18 Fill in the correct question tags and short answers.

- 1 'Patrick is a soldier, isn't he...?' 'Yes, he is...'
- 2 'She has broken her leg,?' 'Yes, unfortunately
- 3 'He's very rich,?' 'Yes, that's right,
- 4 'He doesn't draw very well,?'
 'No,
- 5 'They often go on holiday,?'
 'Yes,
- 6 'You've been to Egypt,?'
 'Yes,

- 7 'You live in England,?'
 'No, I live in Scotland.'
- 8 'He's having lunch now,?'
 'No, He's in a meeting.'
- 9 'Penny lives with Ruby,?'
 'Yes,
- 10 'The bathroom is at the end of the hall,?'
 'No, It's at the top of the stairs.'
- 11 'You and Martin have the same birthday,?'
 'Yes,
- 12 'She wears glasses,?'
 'Yes,

19 Fill in the question tags and then read the sentences aloud with the correct intonation.

sure	not sure	
✓		1 You'll phone me, <u>won't you</u> ?
	✓	2 She goes to bed early, ?
	✓	3 He didn't use to live alone, ?
	✓	4 We aren't going home yet, ?
✓		5 He plays well, ?
✓		6 She's very tidy, ?
	✓	7 Alan went home, ?
✓		8 They have got two daughters, ?
	✓	9 Andrea's very beautiful, ?
✓		10 Ted will cook dinner, ?

20 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Did she returned from her trip to Paris?
- 2 What one do you like best?
- 3 Who did phone last night?
- 4 Did not they enjoy their journey?
- 5 You never drive at night, don't you?
- 6 Let's go shopping, will we?
- 7 There are lots of flowers, aren't they?
- 8 Do he know the answer?
- 9 Who are you going?
- 10 Who do you with live?

Revision Box

21 Turn from direct into reported speech.

- Sandra said to him, 'I have arranged everything for the wedding.'
Sandra told him that she had arranged everything for the wedding.
- He said to me, 'Can you give me directions to the post office, please?'
- The boy said, 'I'm going to the park today.'
- Father said to me, 'I'll tidy the garden tomorrow.'
- 'Turn off the light, please,' John said to me.

22 Choose the correct answer.

- She told me ...**B**... home.
A go B to go C going
- If we now, we will reach the airport in an hour.
A leave B will leave C are leaving
- I wish she talking in class.
A is stopping B has stopped C would stop
- Susan told me she the following morning.
A left B would leave C will leave
- This is the house I was born.
A when B that C where
- money did you save last year?
A How much B How many C How long
- This is my car.
A mother's B mothers' C mothers
- Dinner, yet.
A is served B has been served
C hasn't been served
- Help me carry these bags,?
A wouldn't you B will you C don't you
- My hair was wet. I in the rain.
A had been walking B had walking
C have been walking

ORAL Activity

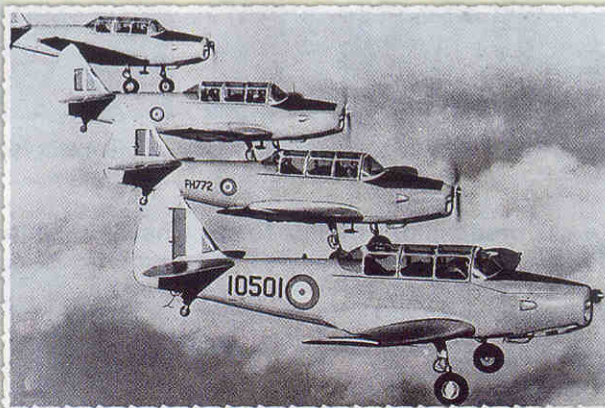
Use the question words from the list and the prompts below to ask and answer questions, as in the example.

how many, when, who, where, how, how long, which

e.g. SA: *When did it start?*

SB: *It started in 1939.*

HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW ABOUT THE SECOND WORLD WAR?



- it / start? In 1939.
- it / last? Six years.
- countries / be involved? Almost every country in the world.
- be / British Prime Minister? Sir Winston Churchill.
- most of the battles / take place? In Europe.
- people / be killed? More than forty million people.
- it / end? The Americans dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

WRITING Activity

Imagine that one of your relatives fought during the Second World War. Write the questions you want to ask him.

.....

.....

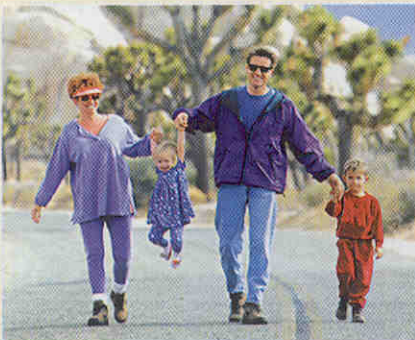
.....

.....

.....

.....

Prepositions of Time



They go for long walks **at** the weekend.



Flowers look lovely **in** spring.



Sharon has ballet lessons **on** Wednesdays and Fridays.

We use prepositions of time to say when something happened, happens or will happen. The most common ones are **at, in** and **on**.

e.g. He wakes up **at** seven o'clock **in** the morning.

AT		IN		ON	
the time:	at 4 o'clock	months:	in April, in June, etc.	days:	on Friday, on New Year's Day
holidays:	at Christmas at Easter at the weekend	seasons:	in (the) winter/spring/autumn, etc.	dates:	on July 4th
	at the moment at present	years:	in 1994, in 1998, etc.	specific part of a day:	on Monday evening
in the expressions:	at dawn at noon at night at midnight	centuries:	in the 20th century	adjective + day:	on a cold day
		in the expressions:	in the morning/afternoon/evening in an hour in a minute in a week/few days/month/year		

NOTE:

- We use the prepositions **from ... to** to show duration.
e.g. He goes to school **from Monday to Friday**.
She works **from 9 to 5** every day.
- We do not use prepositions of time:
 - with the words **today, tomorrow, tonight** and **yesterday**.
e.g. I saw him **yesterday evening**.
 - before the words **this, last, next, every, all, some, each, one** and **any**.
e.g. You can visit me **any Sunday**.

1

First, fill in the gaps with the correct preposition, then answer the questions.

- What time do you get up ...**in**... the morning?
I usually get up at half past seven.
- What do you like doing the weekend?
- Where do you usually go Easter?
- What do you usually do Friday evenings?
- What do you wear a cold winter day?
- What are you doing the moment?
- What time do you go to bed night?
- Did you go on holiday July?
- Do you eat lunch noon?
- What do you usually do Christmas Day?

Prepositions - Linking Words

2

Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 A: What time shall we meet?
B: Let's meet ...*at*... 8 o'clock.
- 2 A: When is the next meeting?
B: It's Wednesday, next week.
- 3 A: What time do you want to have your appointment?
B: Oh, any time the morning.
- 4 A: They got married 1992, you know.
B: Really? I thought it was 1991.
- 5 A: Do you go to bed early?
B: No, I usually go to bed midnight.
- 6 A: What time shall we have lunch?
B: I'd like to eat noon, if that's all right.
- 7 A: When are you going shopping?
B: Probably the weekend.
- 8 A: When was her baby born?
B: July 27th.
- 9 A: I love summer holidays.
B: I prefer to go on holiday winter.
- 10 A: When is your next exam?
B: Tuesday afternoon.

3

Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.



- A: Hello Hannah. I hear you're married now.
B: That's right. I got married last year, 1) ...*at*... Easter.
A: Congratulations! And when did you have your baby?
B: 2) Christmas. Actually, he was born 3) Christmas Day.
A: Well, I'm getting married 4) the summer. Will you come to the wedding?
B: Of course. When exactly is it?
A: It's 5) July 31st. It will be at the village church in Sunnyside.
B: Oh, that's lovely. Listen, can we meet for coffee next week?
A: I go to the gym 6) Wednesdays, but I don't do anything 7) Friday mornings.
B: Great! I'll meet you 8) eleven o'clock in the new café on the High Street.
A: Okay. See you 9) Friday, then.

4

Choose the correct answer.

- 1 My birthday is ...*on*... November 10th.
A at B on C in
- 2 Let's go swimming tomorrow afternoon.
A at B on C —
- 3 Farmers usually get up dawn.
A in B at C on
- 4 We went to Spain last summer.
A at B — C on
- 5 We always buy chocolate eggs Easter.
A in B at C on
- 6 My parents are moving house May.
A in B on C at
- 7 The plane leaves twenty minutes.
A at B in C on
- 8 The last train to London leaves midnight.
A in B at C on

5

How good is your knowledge of history? Look at the pictures and the list of answers given. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| August 5th, 1962 | 1876 |
| 5th century BC | 16th century |
| 1492 | July 20th, 1969 |
| January 27th, 1756 | March 10th, 1922 |

e.g. SA: When was America discovered?
SB: It was discovered in 1492.



When was America discovered?



When was Gandhi first put in prison?



When was the Acropolis built?



When was the Mona Lisa painted?



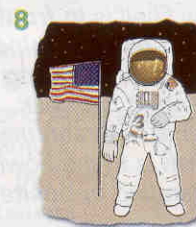
When was the telephone invented?



When was Mozart born?



When did Marilyn Monroe die?



When did Neil Armstrong land on the moon?

Prepositions of Place

We use prepositions of place to say where somebody or something is. These include: **on, under, in front of, behind, beside/next to, near, at, in, between, among** and **opposite**. We use **between** to say that somebody or something is in the middle of two other things or people. We use **among** to say that somebody or something is in the middle of three or more things or people.



- 1 The man is standing **near** the woman.
- 2 The ball is **under** the chair.
- 3 The sponge is **beside/next to** the bucket.
- 4 The plates are **on** the table.
- 5 The yellow shell is **in front of** the orange shell.
The orange shell is **behind** the yellow one.
- 6 Chang is standing **among** his friends.
- 7 She is sitting **at** her desk.
- 8 The big jar is **between** the two small ones.
- 9 The goldfish is **in** the bowl.
- 10 They're standing **opposite** each other.

We use **at**:

- ◆ in the expressions:
at school/university/college, at work, at home, at the top of ..., at the bottom of ...
- ◆ with addresses when we mention the house number.
at 15, Rose Street **but in** Rose Street

We use **in**:

- ◆ in the expressions:
in the middle, in the air, in the sky, in bed, in hospital, in prison, in a newspaper/magazine/book, in a picture, in a street, in the world
- ◆ with the names of cities, countries and continents.
in Paris, in Turkey, in Europe, in Africa

We use **on**:

- ◆ in the expressions:
on the left/right,
on the first/second, etc. floor,
on a chair **but** in an armchair

6

Underline the correct word(s).

- 1 There is a nice picture of our town **on/at/in** this magazine.
- 2 The dog is hiding **in/under/on** the chair.
- 3 Let's go shopping **in/at/opposite** Oxford Street.
- 4 Read the note **at/under/in** the bottom of the page.
- 5 The Jacksons live **at/in/on** the second floor.
- 6 John is **in/near/behind** bed at the moment. He's not feeling very well.
- 7 The bakery is **at/opposite/on** the park.
- 8 Grandmother loves sitting **on/at/in** her favourite armchair by the fire.
- 9 Sarah sits **under/beside/in** me at school.
- 10 There is a playground **at/under/near** the bank.
- 11 Look at the stars **between/in/at** the sky.
- 12 My house is **between/on/among** the bank and the post office.
- 13 After the party, there was rubbish **in/at/on** the floor.
- 14 Let's meet **on/between/at** the theatre.
- 15 There's a very interesting article about UFOs **in/on/at** the newspaper today.

Prepositions - Linking Words

7 Fill in the gaps with *at, on, in, behind* or *next to*. Some of them can be used more than once.



This is Mrs Jacobs. She's a teacher. This is her classroom. There are some shelves (1) *on* the wall. There are lots of books (2) the shelves. There are some tables (3) the classroom. Some children are sitting (4) a table. (5) the table there is a small basket. The children keep their crayons and pencils (6) this basket. Mrs Jacobs is standing (7) the table, (8) John. John is standing up, but the other children are sitting (9) their chairs.

8 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate preposition.

- 1 A: Where are my keys?
B: Probably *in* your pocket.
- 2 A: I like to sit the window on planes.
B: So do I. I like to see the clouds.
- 3 A: Where shall I put the cups?
B:the table, please.
- 4 A: Where is the cat? I can't see it.
B: It's the table.
- 5 A: Where is your house?
B: It's the supermarket and the greengrocer's.

- 6 A: Where's the newspaper?
B: It's the floor.
- 7 A: Where's the post office in this town?
B: It's Mill Street.
- 8 A: Were you born England?
B: No, I was born Italy.
- 9 A: Where does your dog sleep?
B:the garden.
- 10 A: Where shall I put this table?
B: the sofa and the armchair.

9 Fill in the gaps with *on, in front of, under, in, opposite, between, near* or *behind*.



There is a lot of furniture (1) *in* the room. There is a fire-guard (2) the large fireplace. (3) the fireplace there is a table. There's a rug (4) the table. There is a small round table (5) two armchairs. There is a piano (6) the armchairs. There is a small yellow sofa (7) the green sofa. There are some pictures (8) the walls.

10 Choose the correct item.

- 1 I'm going to a party ...C... the weekend.
A in B - C at
- 2 We have a big garden our house.
A among B behind C between
- 3 I'm going to the dentist's tomorrow morning.
A at B on C -
- 4 Sit the fire. It will keep you warm.
A beside B in C under
- 5 I found a gold coin some shells on the beach.
A among B at C in
- 6 Joan sits Mary and Anne at school.
A at B among C between
- 7 Put the chicken the oven.
A at B behind C in

Prepositions of Movement

We use prepositions of movement to show the direction in which somebody or something is moving. These include: **along, across, up, down, into, out of, over, from ... to ..., round, onto** and **through**.



The lorry is going **along** the road.



They're walking **across** the street.



They're going **up** the steps.



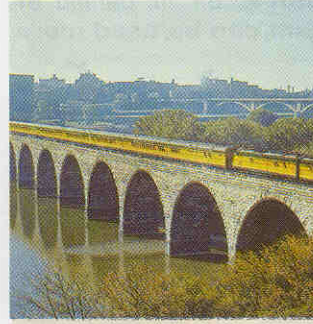
They're coming **down** the steps.



He's getting **into** the taxi.



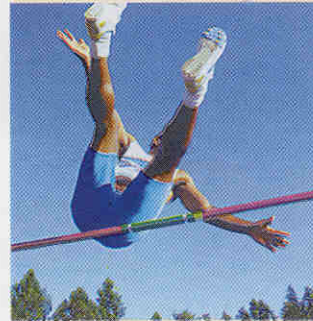
He's coming **out of** the building.



The train is going **over** the bridge. It's going **from London to York**.



The Big Wheel is going **round**.



He's jumping **over** the bar.



She's climbing **onto** the boat.



The planes are going **through** the clouds.

Note:

When we talk about a means of transport, we use the preposition **by**
 e.g. **by car / bus / train / taxi / plane / boat** **but on foot**

When there is an article (a/an/the), a possessive adjective (my, your, etc.) or the possessive case before the means of transport, we do not use the preposition **by**.

e.g. **on the train** (NOT: ~~by the train~~)

in my car (NOT: ~~by my car~~)

on the 6 o'clock bus / in a taxi / on the plane / in Ted's car

Revision Box

11 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

- A: Where is Mr Brown?
B: He has just gone...*into*... his office.
- A: Why are you looking at the map?
B: Because I want to see if there's another way of getting to the village instead of going the forest.
- A: What's that noise?
B: There's a plane flying the house.
- A: Where does this train go?
B: It goes Newcastle Edinburgh.
- A: How do I get to the post office from here?
B: Just walk the corner and you'll see it.
- A: Where is your football?
B: It rolled the hill and fell into the river.
- A: When did you see Betty?
B: I saw her when I came the office this morning.
- A: Why are you tired?
B: Because I just ran the hill.

12 Underline the correct preposition.



The two men are (1) on/over the floor. They have been fighting and they have just fallen (2) up/down the stairs together. One of them is crawling (3) along/through the floor. He is trying to escape. The other man, who is (4) between/behind him, is also (5) on/at the floor. They are both quite (6) near/in the door. The first man wants to get (7) out of/through the room. (8) Near/Over the two men there is a table which has a plant (9) onto/on it.

13 Correct the mistakes.

- The car is going over the street.
- Uncle Jim fell through the stairs yesterday.
- I live in 14, South Grove.
- The Eiffel Tower is on Paris.
- Let's have a party on next Saturday.

14 Choose the correct item.

- Diana ...*C*... her house at the moment.
A had painted B paints C is painting
- Bob fishing every weekend, but he doesn't any more.
A used to go B goes C has gone
- The sun yesterday, so we went to the beach.
A shines B was shining C is shining
- I for two hours when I decided to stop for a rest.
A had been driving B drove C was driving
- we invite Tom and Mary to the party on Saturday?
A Shall B Will C Do
- My parents buy me a computer for my birthday.
A shall B are going to C should
- This table by my father.
A has made B made C was made
- They dinner and then they went for a walk.
A are eating B ate C had eaten
- The party when I arrived.
A had already started B is starting C starts
- The man to hospital in an ambulance.
A was taken B is taken C has taken

15 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- The plants will die if you don't water them.
unless The plants ...*will die unless you water*... them.
- I think you should move to a bigger house.
would If I move to a bigger house.
- Sandra regrets not going to university.
had Sandra to university.
- Why don't you tidy your room?
wish I your room.
- Unless I have a ladder, I won't be able to paint the ceiling.
if I won't be able to paint the ceiling a ladder.
- I was late because I didn't set the alarm clock.
had If I the alarm clock, I wouldn't have been late.

Prepositions - Linking Words

17 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- I won't leave until you *...are...* (be) ready.
- She was playing the piano while I (read) a book.
- The guests arrived after she (clean) the house.
- He thought about my proposal carefully before he (make) a decision.
- When I (see) him, I will recognise him.

Expressing Contrast

We express contrast with the following linking words: **but**, **although/even though/though**, **despite/in spite of**, **however**, etc.

- ◆ **but**
e.g. He was tired, **but** he went to the party.
- ◆ **although/even though/though + subject + verb**
Even though is more emphatic than although. Though is used in everyday speech.
e.g. **Although/Even though/Though** she had a cold, she went to work.
She went to work **although/even though/though** she had a cold.
Though can also go at the end of a sentence where it means 'however'.
e.g. He is old. He is energetic, **though**.
- ◆ **in spite of/despite + noun/-ing form**
e.g. **In spite of/Despite** the rain, we went for a walk.
Mary didn't hurry **in spite of/despite** being late.
In spite of/despite + the fact that...
e.g. **In spite of/Despite** the fact that it was raining, we went for a walk.
- ◆ **however**
However usually goes at the beginning of a sentence to introduce a contrasting idea and is followed by a comma.
e.g. I was sleepy. **However**, I watched the film.

18 Fill in the gaps with *although/even though* or *in spite of/despite*.

- ...Although/Even though...* we were late, we caught the bus.
- The plate broke, it landed on the carpet.
- her rudeness, she's actually a nice person.
- They didn't find the ring looking everywhere for it.
- He's got grey hair he's only twenty-five.
- He wasn't wearing a coat the cold weather.
- being old, my grandmother loves playing tennis.
- they are brothers, they don't look alike.

19 Complete the sentences.

- They like going on holiday, but they don't like flying. Although they *like going on holiday*, they don't like flying.
- The car is old, but it's in good condition. Though the car
- It was snowing, but we went out for a walk. In spite of the fact
- Danny is tall, but Sandra is short. Danny is tall. However,
- It was a hot day, but he wore a warm coat. Although it
- Bill was busy. He helped me with my homework. Even though Bill was
- She fell over, but she didn't hurt herself. Despite falling

20 Match column A with column B in order to make correct sentences.

Column A	Column B
1 Bob phoned Ed,	a after she had packed everything.
2 Kate called a taxi	b so they lit a fire.
3 Tom was fired	c but he wasn't at home.
4 They were cold,	d I don't think she's suitable for the job.
5 Although I like Joan,	e because he was late for work every day.

Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)

1 Choose the correct item.

- They ...**B**... for a new house at the moment.
A have been looking B are looking
C look
- She her driving test.
A has just passed B is passing C passes
- I think I shopping on Saturday afternoon.
A to go B have been C will go
- Be careful! You that plate!
A are dropping B are going to drop C drop
- Ben looks tired. He hard all day long.
A had been working B has been working
C is working
- When I left home this morning, it
A was raining B is raining C rains
- By the time I got there, Bill
A had already left B left C is leaving
- I three years old when my sister was born.
A am B was being C was
- Miss Jones two cups of tea today.
A has drunk B is drinking C drinks
- Sarah my best friend since 1992.
A was B is being C has been

2 Fill in the gaps with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

- A: You ...**needn't**... hurry at the shop. I won't start cooking until you get back.
B: Alright. I'll take my time.
A: You remember to buy eggs. You forget because I need them for the cake.
- A: Can I use the scissors?
B: Yes, but you use them unless there is an adult with you, and you be very careful. You might hurt yourself.
- A: I tidy my room today, Mum?
B: No, you do it today, but you do it before your friends come on Saturday.
- A: Dinner is ready. You wash your hands before you eat.
B: Okay, but first I take off my boots.
A: It's alright. You do that because I haven't cleaned the floor yet.
B: No, really, I take them off because they're very dirty.
- A: I'm going to the supermarket. Are you coming with me?
B: I come?
A: You come if you don't want to. I'll go by myself.

3 Complete the sentences with an appropriate modal verb.

- Why don't we buy** some new furniture for the house?
Shall we buy some new furniture for the house?
- You aren't allowed to use** the office computers.
..... the office computers.
- It is possible that Kelly is** at her brother's.
..... at her brother's.
- Would you like me to call** your parents for you?
..... your parents for you?
- I advise you to go** to university.
..... to university.
- Richard managed to buy** a new car after saving for months.
..... a new car after saving for months.
- I'm sure Alex isn't** at work.
..... at work.
- Perhaps Eric will have** time to come shopping with us.
..... time to come shopping with us.
- It isn't necessary for you to do** the washing-up now.
..... the washing-up now.
- I'm sure he is** French.
..... French.

4 Fill in the gaps with the correct relative adverb or pronoun where necessary.



Yesterday, Amanda met a very interesting man in the library 1) *...where...* she works. He was looking for a book 2) he needed for some research he was doing about ancient Egypt. He told her that he worked for a director 3) was making a TV programme about ancient civilizations. Amanda showed him the books 4) he was looking for. She asked him for the date 5) the programme would be shown on TV. When she watched it the following month, the presenter said, 'I'd like to thank the lady 6) help in the library was very useful.' Amanda was very pleased and that's 7) she's decided to start watching that programme more often.

5 Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- 1 They must prepare the food tonight.
The food must be prepared tonight.
- 2 Someone attacked Sam on Saturday night.
.....
- 3 The maid makes the beds every morning.
.....
- 4 He will write the letter next week.
.....
- 5 Gary had finished the project.
.....
- 6 Catherine is baking the birthday cake.
.....
- 7 Did Alison inform the police?
.....
- 8 The police were watching the burglars.
.....
- 9 We have to wash the dishes before we go out.
.....
- 10 You must complete your homework tonight.
.....
- 11 They may paint their house this summer.
.....
- 12 They teach three languages at that school.
.....
- 13 Tara was driving the car.
.....
- 14 Who wrote that poem?
.....
- 15 Mrs Jefferson was tidying the kitchen.
.....
- 16 The boss is going to offer Andrew a better post.
.....

6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 I will help you with the shopping later if I ...*have*... (have) time.
- 2 Unless you (leave) now, you'll miss the train.
- 3 If I were you, I (not/buy) a second-hand car.
- 4 If only it (stop) snowing, we could go outside.
- 5 Paul had a car accident yesterday. He wishes he (be) more careful.
- 6 If William (pay) the electricity bill, it wouldn't have been cut off.
- 7 Sarah wishes she (not/have to) work so hard every day.
- 8 I wish you (not/make) a mess in the kitchen every time you cook something.

7 Turn the following into reported speech.

- 1 'I'll cook dinner tonight,' Mary said to Anna.
Mary told Anna that she would cook dinner that night.
- 2 'Why are you crying?' Mother asked Tommy.
.....
- 3 'Please, please lend me some money,' the woman said to the rich man.
.....
- 4 'Don't knock on the door so loudly,' Mr Smith said to the children.
.....
- 5 'Coffee is grown in Brazil,' the teacher said to the students.
.....
- 6 'Can you come at four instead of five tomorrow afternoon?' Rick asked me.
.....
- 7 'I have never seen that woman before,' the man said to the policemen.
.....
- 8 'I'll buy you a new toy train for your birthday,' Grandpa said to Alex.
.....
- 9 'What time is Paul coming?' I asked.
.....
- 10 'Call me as soon as you hear about the results,' the boss said to me.
.....

8 Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

Doris Alder is Peter's neighbour. She lives **in the house which is opposite his**. She is **67 years old**, but she still does many things for herself. Her favourite hobbies are **knitting and swimming**. She goes swimming **twice a week**. Every Saturday morning, Doris and Peter **go shopping** together. They take the bus into town and they come home **by taxi**. Peter admires Doris **because she is a very active person**.

- 1 *Who is Peter's neighbour?*
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)

9 Choose the correct item.

- Don't take that money from the table. It's ...*B*...
A me B mine C my
- Dora is crying. She has cut
A she B her C herself
- Is that book?
A your B yours C you
- William and Thomas enjoy playing cricket.
A Both B All C Neither
- That's my pencil. Please give it to
A I B my C me
- Sam, Paul and Terry are in the same class at school.
A both B all C neither
- There's the shopping. Please put away in the kitchen.
A itself B its C it
- Enjoy at the party, Beth. Have a good time!
A your B you C yourself
- Ruth nor Wendy has got curly hair.
A All B Both C Neither
- Jeff, Alice and Rosie are all young. of them are old.
A None B All C Both

10 Put in a/an or the.

- This is ...*a*... very boring book. I don't want to read it.
- film was very exciting — I enjoyed it.
- Tom is teacher at school I used to go to.
- Do you know answer to this question?
- I watched interesting programme on TV last night.
- bakery is closed every Saturday afternoon.
- Simon hasn't got job at moment, but he's going for interview next week.
- amazing thing happened to me the other day; I won lottery!
- man who lives next door to me is vet. He's really nice man.
- My father is doctor and he works at hospital which is near our house.
- Don't forget to lock door when you leave.
- Terry sold his old bicycle so that he could buy new one.
- I found old coin on the beach the other day.
- Mr Willis is only person I know in this area.

11 Complete the sentences with comparatives/superlatives adding any necessary words.

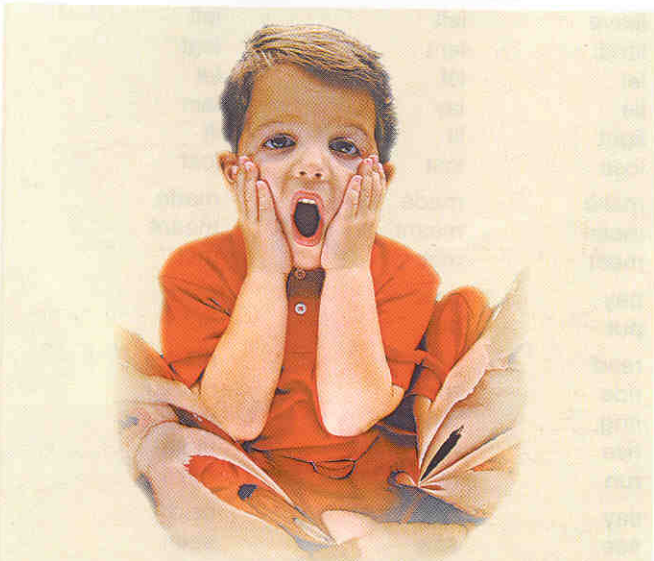
- Danny is clever, but Melanie is ...*more clever/cleverer than*... he is.
- Russia is a big country. In fact, it is country the world.
- Many fruits are sweet, but I think that grapes are fruit all.
- I'm tall, but my sister is I am.
- My grandfather is a very generous man. He is anyone else I know.
- Chocolate ice-cream tastes good, but strawberry ice-cream tastes even chocolate.
- I am young, but my brother is person our family.
- Pamela's parents are rich, but Brian's parents are Pamela's.
- Apple pie is delicious, but cherry pie is all.
- Billy and Steven are funny. They are boys my class.

12 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets, adding any necessary words.



- The town is ...*bigger than*... (big) the village.
- The village is (small) all.
- The city is (big) all.
- There is (much) traffic in a city in a village.
- The city has (many) offices the town.
- The village is (quiet) all.
- The city is (noisy) all.
- There are (many) people in the city in the village.
- There are (few) shops in the village in the city.
- There are (good) cinemas in the city in the town.

13 Underline the correct answer.



- A: Why are you crying, William?
 B: Because I've lost my favourite toy car. I left it **(1) nowhere/somewhere/anywhere** but I can't remember where.
 A: Have you looked for it?
 B: Yes, but I can't find it **(2) anywhere/everywhere/nowhere**.
 A: Did you ask **(3) someone/no one/anyone** if they had seen it?
 B: I asked **(4) everyone/someone/no one** in my class and **(5) any/no/some** teachers too, but **(6) anybody/nobody/somebody** had seen it.
 A: Well, never mind, I'll buy you **(7) anything/everything/something** else.
 B: I don't want **(8) nothing/anything/everything** else – I want my favourite toy car!
 A: William, what's that in your pocket?
 B: It's my car! It was here all the time!

14 Fill in the gaps with *some, any, no, every* or one of their derivatives.

- 1 A: I would like ...*some*... jam on my toast.
 B: I'm sorry, I haven't got
 2 A: Mum, there's toothpaste left.
 B: There's a new tube in the bathroom cupboard.
 3 A: Can I do to help?
 B: No, thank you.
 4 A: Would you like cheese?
 B: No, thank you. Don't put on my plate.
 5 A: Did you know many people at the party?
 B: Yes! I knew

- 6 A: Do you often go to the gym?
 B: Yes. I go day.
 7 A: Do you know where the new café is?
 B: It's in the shopping centre.
 8 A: Sorry, what did you say?
 B: I only coughed.
 9 A: This exercise is very difficult.
 B: It's easy Jack! could do it!
 10 A: Who told you about it?
 B: I found out myself.
 11 A: Mum, I've baked a cake!
 B: I know. The kitchen's a mess. There's flour!
 12 A: Where did you go on holiday last year?
 B: I stayed at home.

15 Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or the -ing form.

- 1 A: Did you enjoy ...*travelling*... (travel) around Europe?
 B: Yes, but it's nice (be) back home.
 2 A: Where's Mum?
 B: She's gone to the shop (buy) some eggs and milk.
 3 A: Have you finished your letter yet?
 B: No. I only started (write) it five minutes ago.
 4 A: What did you do on Saturday afternoon?
 B: I went (cycle) with my family.
 5 A: We must (go) in a minute.
 B: I know. I'm almost ready.
 6 A: I don't like (do) all the housework by myself.
 B: I'll help you with it.
 7 A: Was Uncle John pleased (see) you?
 B: Yes. He was very surprised.
 8 A: Can I ask you something?
 B: I'm busy (work) at the moment. Ask me later.

16 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Neither John and Sally likes swimming.
 2 I don't want nothing to eat at the moment.
 3 You needn't run across the road. It's dangerous.
 4 Have you never been to Italy?
 5 I was running very fast when I was young, but I can't now.
 6 Tom was the man which helped me paint my house.
 7 Sandra had visited the zoo with her friends yesterday.

Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Past	Past Participle	Infinitive	Past	Past Participle
be	was	been	leave	left	left
bear	bore	born(e)	lend	lent	lent
beat	beat	beaten	let	let	let
become	became	become	lie	lay	lain
begin	began	begun	light	lit	lit
bite	bit	bitten	lose	lost	lost
blow	blew	blown	make	made	made
break	broke	broken	mean	meant	meant
bring	brought	brought	meet	met	met
build	built	built	pay	paid	paid
burn	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)	put	put	put
burst	burst	burst	read	read	read
buy	bought	bought	ride	rode	ridden
can	could	(been able to)	ring	rang	rung
catch	caught	caught	rise	rose	risen
choose	chose	chosen	run	ran	run
come	came	come	say	said	said
cost	cost	cost	see	saw	seen
cut	cut	cut	sell	sold	sold
deal	dealt	dealt	send	sent	sent
dig	dug	dug	set	set	set
do	did	done	sew	sewed	sewn
draw	drew	drawn	shake	shook	shaken
dream	dreamt (dreamed)	dreamt (dreamed)	shine	shone	shone
drink	drank	drunk	shoot	shot	shot
drive	drove	driven	show	showed	shown
eat	ate	eaten	shut	shut	shut
fall	fell	fallen	sing	sang	sung
feed	fed	fed	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	sleep	slept	slept
fight	fought	fought	smell	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)
find	found	found	speak	spoke	spoken
fly	flew	flown	spell	spelt (spelled)	spelt (spelled)
forbid	forbade	forbidden	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	spill	spilt	spilt
forgive	forgave	forgiven	spoil	spoilt (spoiled)	spoilt (spoiled)
freeze	froze	frozen	spread	spread	spread
get	got	got	stand	stood	stood
give	gave	given	steal	stole	stolen
go	went	gone	stick	stuck	stuck
grow	grew	grown	sting	stung	stung
hang	hung (hanged)	hung (hanged)	strike	struck	struck
have	had	had	swear	swore	sworn
hear	heard	heard	sweep	swept	swept
hide	hid	hidden	swim	swam	swam
hit	hit	hit	take	took	taken
hold	held	held	teach	taught	taught
hurt	hurt	hurt	tear	tore	torn
keep	kept	kept	tell	told	told
know	knew	known	think	thought	thought
lay	laid	laid	throw	threw	thrown
lead	led	led	understand	understood	understood
learn	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)	wake	woke	woken
			wear	wore	worn
			win	won	won
			write	wrote	written

ENGLISH GRAMMAR BOOK

Grammarway 2

Grammarway 2 is the second book in a four-level grammar series in full colour. Designed for learners at post-elementary level, the book practises and revises English grammar structures systematically.

This book can be used to supplement any main course at post-elementary level.

Key Features

- clear, simple presentation of grammar structures through functional examples and attractive photographs and illustrations
- comprehensive theory boxes
- a variety of exercises with spaces for filling in answers
- exercises designed to help the learner use appropriate language patterns in everyday situations
- colourful photographs and illustrations
- error correction exercises
- oral and writing activities at the end of each unit
- a revision box in each unit
- revision units

The **Teacher's Book** provides:

- a full key to the exercises in the Student's Book
- detailed notes on how to present the theory and exploit the exercises in the Student's Book
- photocopiable assessment tests

The **Picture Flashcards** can be used for classroom presentation and practice of the new structures in each unit.

Components

- Student's Book
- Teacher's Book
- Picture Flashcards

ISBN 1-903128-91-9



9 781903 128916